# CARNIVAL

Owner's Manual




The Power to Surprise

# FOREWORD

Dear Customer,

Thank you for selecting your new Kia vehicle.

As a global car manufacturer focused on building high-quality vehicles with exceptional value, Kia Motors is dedicated to providing you with a customer service experience that exceeds your expectations.

If technical assistance is needed on your vehicle, authorized Kia dealerships are available at your service, with their Kia trained technicians, recommended special tools and Kia genuine parts.

This Owner's Manual will acquaint you with the operation of features and equipment that are either standard or optional on this vehicle, along with the maintenance needs of this vehicle. Therefore, you may find some descriptions and illustrations not applicable to your vehicle. You are advised to read this publication carefully and follow the instructions and recommendations. Please always keep this manual in the vehicle for your, and any subsequent owner's, reference.

All information contained in this Owner's Manual was accurate at the time of publication. However, as Kia continues to make improvements to its products, the company reserves the right to make changes to this manual or any of its vehicles at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations.

Please drive safely, and enjoy your Kia vehicle!

© 2020 KIA MOTORS India, Inc.

All rights reserved. May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of Kia Motors India, Inc.

Printed in India

## How to use this manual

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways.

We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimise the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject, it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Chapters: This manual has nine chapter plus an abbreviation, index and Kia warranty policy sections. Each chapter begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that chapter has the information you want.

You will find various WARNINGs, CAUTIONs, and NOTICEs in this manual. These WARNINGs were prepared to enhance your personal safety. You should carefully read and follow ALL procedures and recommendations provided in these WARNINGs, CAUTIONs and NOTICEs.

**⚠ WARNING**

A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

**⚠ CAUTION**

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.

**✻ NOTICE**

A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.

# Table of Contents


Introduction 1

Your vehicle at a glance 2

Safety features of your vehicle 3

Features of your vehicle 4

Driving your vehicle 5

What to do in an emergency 6

Maintenance 7

Specifications & Consumer information 8

Abbreviation A

Index I

Kia Warranty Policy W

# Introduction 1

**Fuel requirements** ..... **1–2**
• Diesel engine ..... 1–2
**Vehicle handling instructions** ..... **1–2**
**Vehicle modifications** ..... **1–3**
**Vehicle break-in process** ..... **1–3**
**Risk of burns when parking or stopping vehicle** ..... **1–4**

# INTRODUCTION

## Fuel requirements

### Diesel engine

### Diesel fuel

Diesel engines must be operated only on commercially available diesel fuel that complies with EN 590 or comparable standard. (EN stands for "European Norm"). Do not use marine diesel fuel, heating oils, or non-approved fuel additives, as this will increase wear and cause damage to the engine and fuel system. The use of non-approved fuels and / or fuel additives will result in a limitation of your warranty rights.

Diesel fuel of above cetane 51 is used in your vehicle. If two types of diesel fuels are available, use summer or winter fuel properly according to the following temperature conditions.

- Above -5 °C (23 °F) ... Summer type diesel fuel.
- Below -5 °C (23 °F) ... Winter type diesel fuel.

Watch the fuel level in the tank very carefully: If the engine stops through fuel failure, the circuits must be completely purged to restart.

## Vehicle handling instructions

As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher centre of gravity than other types of vehicles. In other words they are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional 2-wheel drive vehicles.

Avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres. Again, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

**Be sure to read the "Reducing the risk of a rollover" on page 6-63".**

## Vehicle modifications

This vehicle should not be modified.

Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire.

For your safety, do not use unauthorised electronic devices.

## Vehicle break-in process

No special break-in period is needed.

By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- Whilst driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't tow a trailer during the first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) of operation.

## Risk of burns when parking or stopping vehicle.

- Do not park or stop the vehicle near flammable items such as leaves, paper, oil, and tyre. Such items placed near the exhaust system can become a fire hazard.
- When an engine idles at a high speed with the rear side of the vehicle touching the wall, heat of the exhaust gas can cause discoloration or fire. Keep enough space between the rear part of the vehicle and the wall.
- Be sure not to touch the exhaust/catalytic systems whilst engine is running or right after the engine is turned off. There is a risk of burns since the systems are extremely hot.

# Your vehicle at a glance 2

Exterior overview ..... 2-2
Interior overview ..... 2-4
Instrument panel overview ..... 2-6
Engine compartment ..... 2-8

# YOUR VEHICLE AT A GLANCE

## Exterior overview

Front view




OYPI019001

* The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Bonnet | 4-49 |
| 2. Head lamp | 4-105, 7-59 |
| 3. Fog lamp | 4-108, 7-67 |
| 4. Wheel and tyre | 7-36, 8-5 |
| 5. Outside rearview mirror | 4-62 |
| 6. Sunroof | 4-54 |
| 7. Front windscreen wiper blades | 4-110, 7-31 |
| 8. Windows | 4-44 |
| 9. Front ultrasonic sensor | 4-99 |

## Rear view

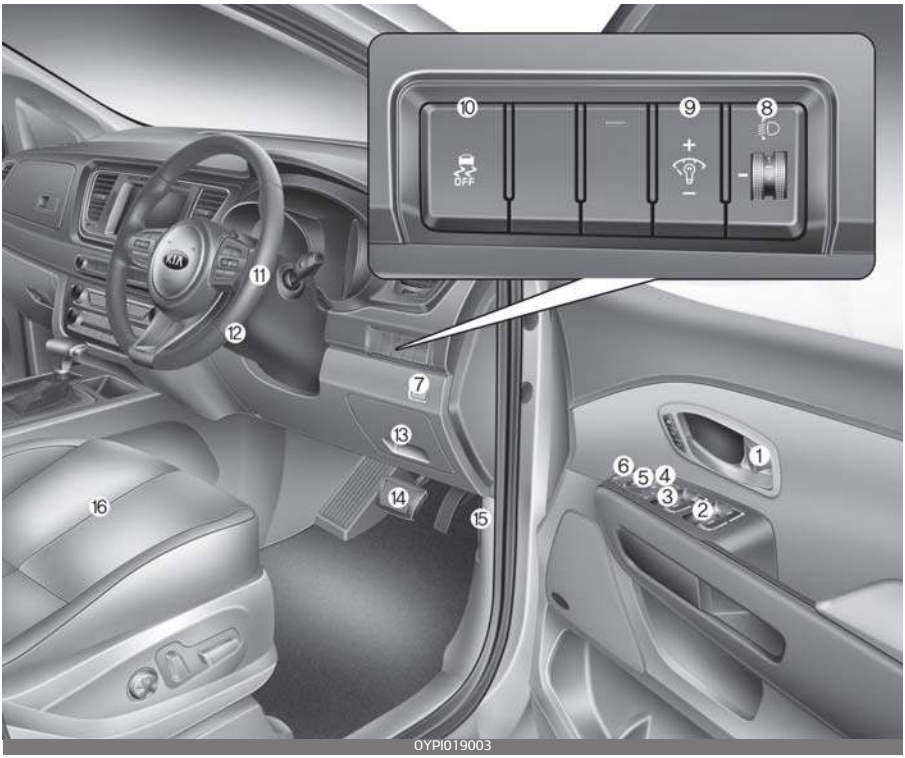



OYPI019002

* The actual shape may differ from the illustration.


| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Door locks (for front door) | 4-20 |
| 2. Fuel & urea filler door | 4-51, 7-93 |
| 3. Rear combination lamp | 7-59 |
| 4. High mounted stop lamp | 7-72 |
| 5. Rear window wiper blade | 4-110, 7-32 |
| 6. Tailgate | 4-26 |
| 7. Antenna | 4-154 |
| 8. Rear view camera | 4-104 |
| 9. Rear ultrasonic sensor | 4-95, 4-99 |
| 10.Door Locks (for sliding door) | 4-20 |

## Interior overview




* The actual shape may differ from the illustration.


| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Inside door handle | 4-22 |
| 2. Power window switch | 4-47 |
| 3. Central door lock switch | 4-23 |
| 4. Power window and rear sunroof lock button | 4-47 |
| 5. Outside rearview mirror control | 4-62 |
| 6. Outside rearview mirror folding button | 4-64 |
| 7. Fuel filler door open button | 4-51 |
| 8. Headlight levelling device switch | 4-109 |
| 9. Instrument panel illumination control switch | 4-66 |
| 10.ESC OFF button | 5-32 |
| 11.Steering wheel | 4-58 |
| 12.Tilt and telescopic steering control lever | 4-59 |
| 13.Inner fuse panel | 7-47 |

14.Brake pedal 5-20
15.Bonnet release lever 4-49
16.Seat 3-3

*: if equipped

## Instrument panel overview




OYPI019004

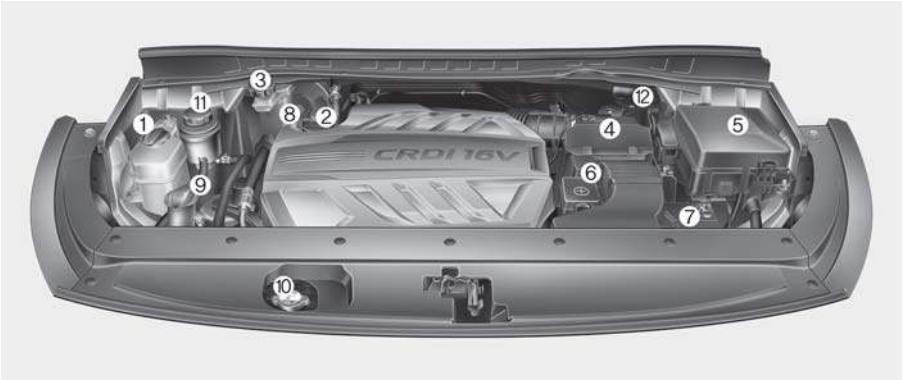
* The actual shape may differ from the illustration.


1. Cruise control button 5-37
2. Driver's front air bag 3-76
3. Horn 4-60
4. Instrument cluster 4-66
5. Wiper and washer control lever 4-110
6. Ignition switch 5-6
   Engine start/stop button 5-9
7. Audio remote control buttons
   (Refer to the infotainment manual for details.)
8. Audio (Refer to the infotainment manual for details.)
9. Hazard warning flasher 6-3
10. Climate control system 4-122
11. Automatic transmission 5-14

12.Air ventilation seat 4-143
13.Active Eco button 5-41
14.Parking Distance Warning button 4-99
15.Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) ON/OFF button 5-23
16.Centre console storage box 4-138
17.Sunglasses holder 4-139
18.USB charger 4-145
19.Power outlet 4-144
20.Glove box 4-139
21.Passenger's front air bag 3-76
22.Auto hold ON/OFF button 5-28
23.Lighting control lever 4-105

## Engine compartment

Diesel Engine (R2.2)




OYP078002R

* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine coolant reservoir 7-20
2. Engine oil filler cap 7-19
3. Brake fluid reservoir 7-23
4. Air cleaner 7-28
5. Fuse box 7-49
6. Positive battery terminal 6-6, 7-33
7. Negative battery terminal 6-6, 7-33
8. Engine oil dipstick 7-19
9. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir 7-25
10. Radiator cap 6-8, 7-20
11. Power steering reservoir (if equipped) 7-24
12. Fuel filter 7-27

# Safety features of your vehicle 3


**Seats ..... 3-3**

- Front seat adjustment - manual ..... 3-8
- Front seat adjustment - power ..... 3-10
- Headrest (for front seat) ..... 3-12
- Seatback pocket ..... 3-15
- Rear seat adjustment (9 seat) ..... 3-15
- Rear seat adjustment (7, 8 Seats) ..... 3-23
- Headrest (for rear seat) (7, 8 Seats) ..... 3-35

**Seat belts ..... 3-38**

- Seat belt restraint system ..... 3-38
- Pre-tensioner seat belt ..... 3-49
- Seat belt precautions ..... 3-52
- Care of seat belts ..... 3-54

**Child restraint system (CRS) ..... 3-55**

- Our recommendation: Children always in the rear ..... 3-55
- Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS) ..... 3-56
- Installing a child restraint system with a lap/shoulder belt ..... 3-58

**Air bag-supplemental restraint system ..... 3-68**

- How does the air bag system operate ..... 3-70
- Air bag warning and indicator ..... 3-73
- SRS components and functions ..... 3-73
- Driver's and passenger's front air bag ..... 3-76
- Side air bag ..... 3-79
- Curtain air bag ..... 3-80
- Air bag collision sensors ..... 3-83

# 3 Safety features of your vehicle


- Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag) ... 3-84
- SRS care ..... 3-88
- Additional safety precautions ..... 3-89
- Air bag warning label ..... 3-90

# SAFETY FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

## Seats

9 seats



OYPI039001

**Front seat**
1. Forward and backward
2. Seatback angle
3. Seat cushion height
4. Lumbar support (Driver's seat)
5. Headrest

**2nd / 3rd row seat**
6. Forward and backward
7. Seatback angle and folding
8. Headrest

**4th row seat**
9. Headrest
10. Seat sinking

7, 8 Seats



OYPI039322

* There was no seat on rear 2nd-row centre at vehicle with 7 seating positions.

**Front seat**

1. Forward and backward
2. Seatback angle
3. Seat cushion height
4. Lumbar support (Driver's seat)
5. Headrest
6. Walk-in switch

**2nd / 3rd row seat**

7. Forward and backward
8. Seatback angle and folding
9. Walk-in
10. Headrest
11. Armrest
12. Seatback angle and folding
13. Seat sinking
14. Headrest

7 Seats for HTX package



0YPI039297

**Front seat**

1. Forward and backward
2. Seatback angle
3. Seat cushion height
4. Lumbar support (Driver's seat)
5. Headrest
6. Walk-in switch

**2nd / 3rd row seat**

7. Forward and backward
8. Left and right
9. Seatback angle and folding
10. Leg support
11. Walk-in
12. Headrest
13. Armrest
14. Seatback angle and folding
15. Seat sinking
16. Headrest

**⚠ WARNING**

**Loose objects**

Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Do not place anything under the front seats.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Uprighting seat**

When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly and be sure there are no other occupants around the seat. If the seatback is returned without being held and controlled, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in accidental injury to a person struck by the seatback.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driver responsibility for passengers**

Riding in a vehicle with the seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. The driver must advise the passenger to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not use a sitting cushion that reduces friction between the seat and passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt cannot operate normally.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driver's seat**

- Never attempt to adjust the seat whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.
- Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.
- Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips. This is the best position to protect you in case of an accident.

- In order to avoid unnecessary and perhaps severe air bag injuries, always sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel whilst maintaining comfortable control of the vehicle. We recommend that your chest be at least 25 cm (10 inches) away from the steering wheel.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Rear seatbacks**

- The rear seatback must be securely latched. If not, passengers and objects could be thrown forward resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.
- Luggage and other cargo should be laid flat in the cargo area. If objects are large, heavy, or must be piled, they must be secured. Under no circumstances should cargo be piled higher than the seatbacks. Failure to follow these warnings could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop, collision or rollover.
- No passenger should ride in the cargo area or sit or lie on folded seatbacks whilst the vehicle is moving. All passengers must be properly seated in seats and restrained properly whilst riding.
- When resetting the seatback to the upright position, make sure it is securely latched by pushing it forward and backwards.
- To avoid the possibility of burns, do not remove the carpet in the cargo area.
  Emission control devices beneath this floor generate high temperatures.

**⚠ WARNING**

After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place by attempting to move the seat forward or backward without using the lock release lever. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not adjust the seat whilst wearing seat belts. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on the abdomen.
- Use extreme caution so that hands or other objects are not caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.
- Do not put a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may gush out of the lighter and cause fire.

- If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful whilst adjusting the front seat position.
- Use extreme caution when picking small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the centre console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.

### Feature of Seat Leather

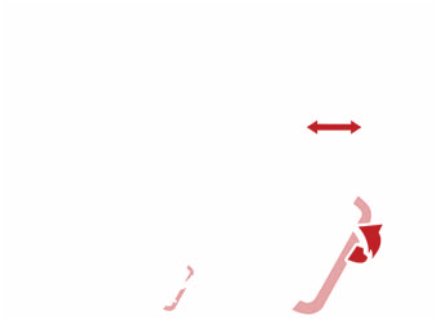
- Leather is made from the outer skin of an animal, which goes through a special process to be available for use. Since it is a natural substance, each part differs in thickness or density.
  Wrinkles may appear as a natural result of stretching and shrinking depending on the temperature and humidity.
- The seat cover is made of stretchable material to improve comfort of passengers.
- The parts contacting the body are curved and the side supporting area is high which provides driving comfort and stability.
- Wrinkles may appear naturally from usage. It is not a fault of the product.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Wrinkles or abrasions which appear naturally from usage are not covered by warranty.
- Belts with metallic accessories, zippers or keys inside the back pocket may damage the seat fabric.
- Make sure not to wet the seat. It may change the nature of natural leather.
- Jeans or clothes which could bleach may contaminate the surface of the seat covering fabric.

### Front seat adjustment – manual

#### *Forward and backward*



0YPI039002

To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

### *Seatback angle*

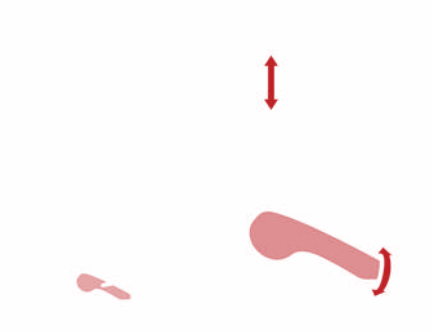


OYPI039003

To recline the seatback:

1. Lean forward slightly and lift up the seatback recline lever.
2. Carefully lean back on the seat and adjust the seatback of the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever MUST return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)

### *Seat height (for driver's seat)*

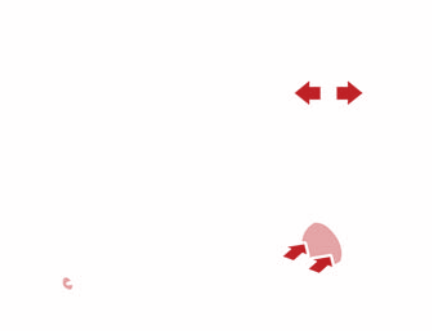


OYPI039004

To change the height of the seat, push the lever upwards or downwards.

1. To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
2. To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

### *Lumbar support (for driver's seat) (if equipped)*



OYPI039005

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the

rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

### Front seat adjustment – power (if equipped)

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so you can easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

**⚠ WARNING**

The power seat is operable with the ignition OFF.

Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- The power seat is driven by an electric motor. Stop operating once the adjustment is completed. Excessive operation may damage the electrical equipment.
- When in operation, the power seat consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, don't adjust the power seat longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.
- Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may result in power seat motor or electrical component malfunction.

***Forward and backward***



0YPI039006

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seat to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

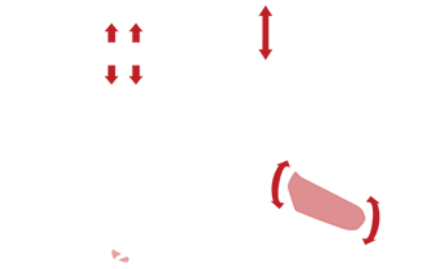
***Seatback angle***



0YPI039007

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seatback to the desired angle. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### *Seat height (if equipped)*



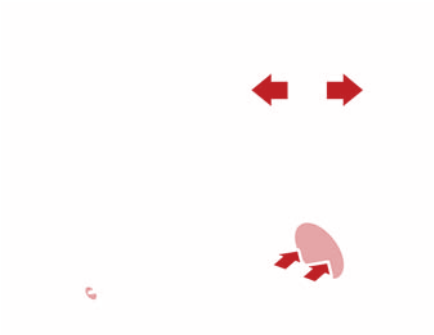
OYPI039008

Pull the front portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the front part of the seat cushion. Pull the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the rear part of the seat cushion. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### *Lumbar support (for driver's seat) (if equipped)*

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the drivers seat.

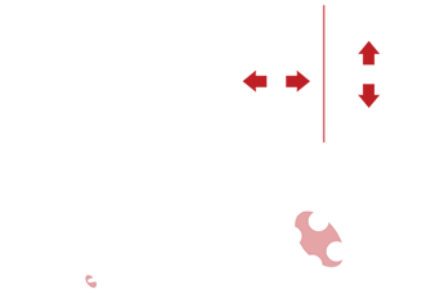
Type A



OYPI039009

1. Press the front portion of the switch to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch, to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

Type B

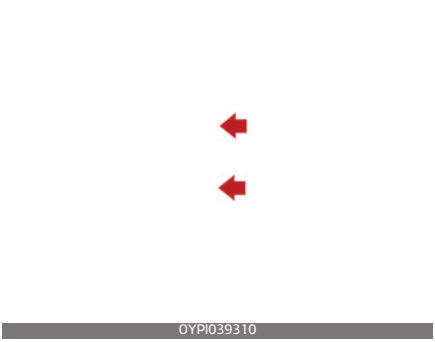


OYPI039329

1. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch (2), to decrease support.
2. Move the support position up and down by pressing the switch (3) or (4).
3. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

### Headrest (for front seat)

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a headrest for the occupant's safety and comfort.



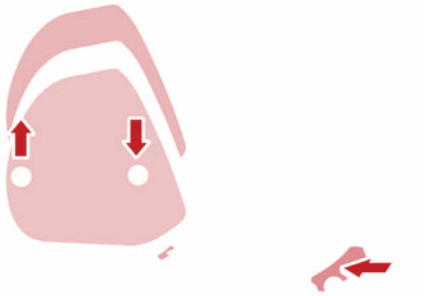
OYPI039310

The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

- For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.
- Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.
- Do not adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat whilst the vehicle is in motion.

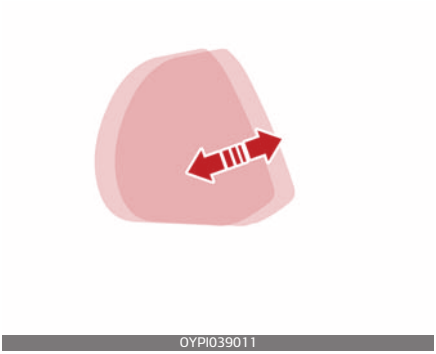
#### *Adjusting the height up and down*



OYPI039010

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

### *Forward and backward adjustment (if equipped)*



OYPI039011

The headrest may be adjusted forward to 4 different positions by pulling the headrest forward to the desired detent.

To adjust the headrest to it's furthest backwards position,

Pull the headrest fully forward to the farthest position and release it.

Adjust the headrest so that it properly supports the head and neck.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If you recline the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.



ODEEV058008NR

### *Removal/Reinstall*

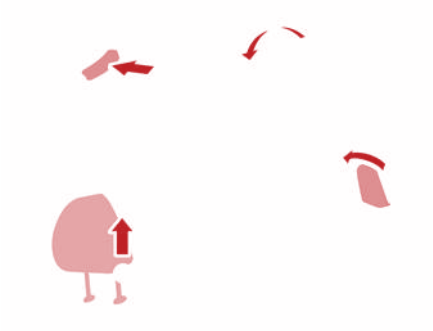
To remove the headrest:

Type A



OYPI039012

Type B



OYPI039013

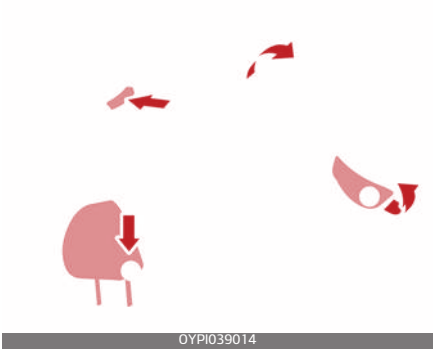
1. Recline the seatback (2) with the recline lever or switch (1).
2. Raise headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) whilst pulling the headrest up (4).

**⚠ WARNING**

NEVER allow anyone to ride in a seat with the headrest removed.

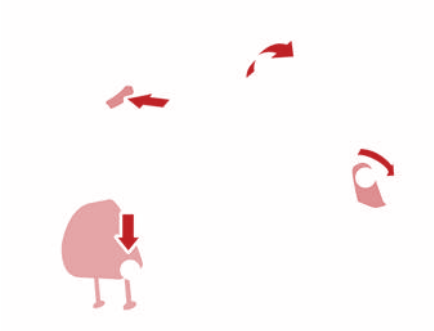
To reinstall the headrest:

Type A



OYPI039014

Type B



OYPI039015

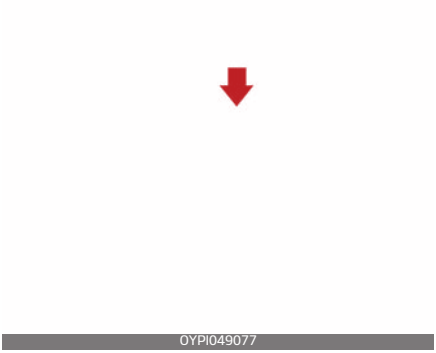
1. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1).
2. Recline the seatback(4) with the recline lever or switch (3).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.

**⚠ WARNING**

Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.

### Seatback pocket

The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front passenger's and driver's seatbacks.



OYPI049077

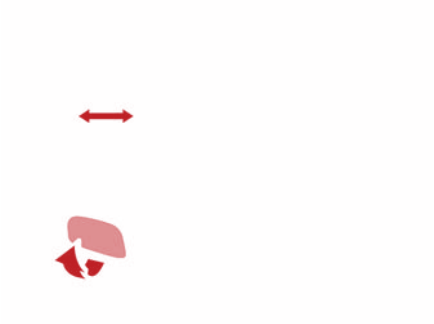
**⚠ WARNING**

**Seatback pockets**

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.

### Rear seat adjustment (9 seat)

***Forward and backward (2nd, 3rd row seat)***



OYPI039018

To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

### *Seatback angle (2nd, 3rd row seat)*



OYPI039019

To recline the seatback:

1. Pull up the seatback recline lever.
2. Hold the lever and adjust the seatback of the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever MUST return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)

### *Folding the rear seat (2nd, 3rd row seat)*

The rear seatbacks can be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

The purpose of the fold-down rear seatbacks is to allow you to carry long objects that could not be accommodated in the cargo area.

Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback whilst the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop. Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.



OYPI039309

1. Insert the rear seat belt webbing in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
2. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
3. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.
4. Pull on the seatback folding lever, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle. When you return the seatback to its upright position, always be sure it has locked into position by pushing on the top of the seatback.

5. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward by pulling on the folding lever.
   Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place.
   Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Uprighting seat**

When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. If the seatback is returned without holding it, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in injury caused by being struck by the seatback.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Damaging rear seat belt buckles**

When you fold the rear (2nd and/or 3rd row) seat back, insert the buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion. Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged by the rear seatback.

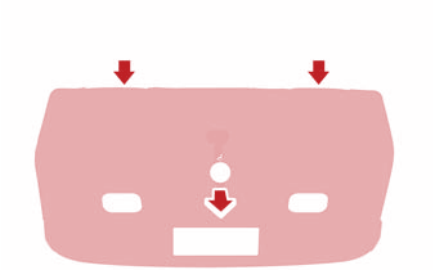
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Rear seat belts**

When returning the rear (2nd and/or 3rd row) seatbacks to the up right position, remember to return the rear shoulder belts to their proper position. Routing the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides will help keep the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.

### *Stowing the rear seat (4th row seat)*

The rear seat can be folded and stowed in the luggage compartment to provide additional cargo space.



OYPI039023

To stow the rear seat:

1. Insert the rear seat belt buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion, and insert the rear seat belt webbing in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.
   * For further information, refer to "Seat belts" on page 3-38.
2. Pull down the headrests of the 4th row seats as far down as possible (1).
3. Pull the folding strap (2) located on back of the seatback. The 4th row seats will fold down.

4. Firmly press on the seatback to securely stow the seats in place.

To use the rear seat:



OYPI039027

1. Pull on the folding strap (1), and at the same time, pull up the top of the seatback (2).
2. Fully pull the seatback to upright position and then let go of the strap (1). The seatback will lock in place. To confirm, try to move the seatback front to back. Then, adjust the head rest to suit the occupant.

**✻ NOTICE**

When folding open a seatback, position the fold back strap vertically to the seatback and pull upward.

**⚠ WARNING**

- If the 4th row seatback's folding strap is pulled whilst either passenger, pet, or luggage is in the seat, the folded 4th row seats will cause harm to the occupant or luggage. Before fully folding down the 4th row seats, always make sure there is no passenger, pet, luggage in the seats.



OYPI039058

- When the 4th row seatback is pulled up to upright positions but not locked into place, the seatback may move suddenly. Always release the strap to securely lock the seatback in position.
- Underneath the 4th row seats, there is equipment for stowing. Prevent getting any part of the body or clothing caught in the crevice under the seats.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Prior to adjusting the 4th row seats, move the 3rd row seats and seatbacks to the desired position beforehand. The seatbacks may clash whilst folding and unfolding and result in damage.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Cargo**

Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

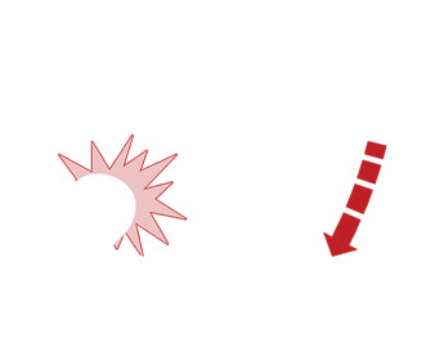
**Cargo loading**

Make sure the engine is off, the automatic transmission is in P (Park), and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**4th row seat**

4th row occupants should always remain in the centre of the seat cushion so the occupants' heads are protected by the headrest. If not, the tailgate may hit the occupant's head, which could cause injury.



OYPI039330



***Full flat seats***



OYPI039060

[A] 2nd row, [B] 3rd row

Only use the full flat seat mode when the 4th row seats are completely folded down.

1. Push the 3rd row seats toward the rear end of the vehicle as far as possible.
2. Push the 2nd row seats to the front of the vehicle as far as possible.
3. Remove the 2nd row seat headrests.
4. Fully recline the 2nd row seatbacks.

Pull upward the seatback adjustment lever located on top of the 2nd, 3rd row centre seats to recline.

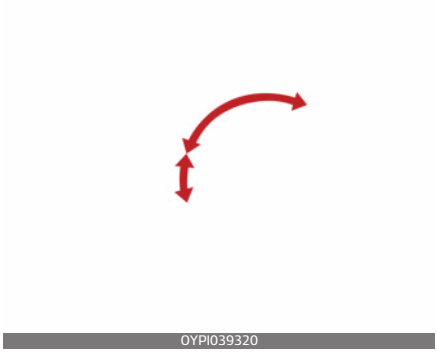
**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not move the vehicle with a passenger and any full flat seat.
- Make sure any part of the body, such as hand and foot, is well out of the way whilst adjusting the seatback recline angle.

**✻ NOTICE**

- When returning the seats to upright positions, reinstall the headrests to original positions.
- Do not put heavy pressure nor load heavy cargo on the seatback when in full flat position. It may damage the seatback.
- Be careful of seat belt entanglement in fully flat mode. Protect against possible seat belt damage by storing it in seat belt holders.

***Armrest (if equipped)***



0YPI039320

The armrests are located on the side of seatbacks.

To use the armrest, swing down the armrest to the lowest position.

Adjusting the Armrest

1. When the armrest is in the most upward position, move the armrest to the lowest position until you hear the distinct 'click' sound. Afterward, lift the armrest up within adjusting angle of 30 degrees (1) the desired angle.
2. When the armrest is located within the adjusting angle of 30 degrees (1), lift the armrest up either to an unadjustable (2) or most upward position. Then, move the armrest to the lowest position until you hear the distinct 'click' sound. Afterward, lift the armrest up within adjusting angle of 30 degrees to the desired angle.

*** NOTICE**

Do not sit on the armrest.

### *Headrest (for rear seat)*



OYPI039337

* 2nd-row centre headrest for 8 seats

The rear seats are equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height as the centre of gravity of an occupant's head.



OYPI039331

Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes.

Also adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.

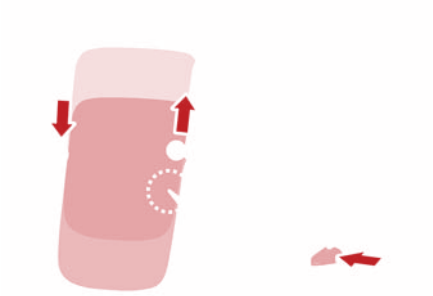
### *Adjusting the height up and down*

2nd, 3rd row seat



OYPI039076

4th row seat



OYPI039078

To raise the headrest:

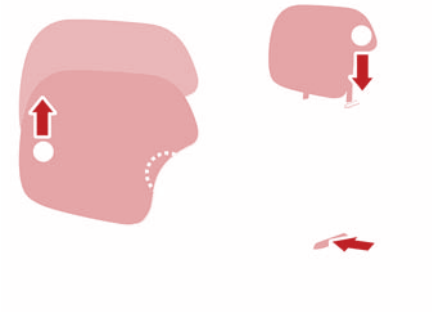
1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

### *Removal and reinstallation*

2nd, 3rd row seat



OYPI039077

4th row seat



OYPI039079

To remove the headrest

1. Raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) whilst pulling the headrest up (2).

To reinstall the headrest:

1. Put the headrest poles (3) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1).
2. Adjust it to the appropriate height.

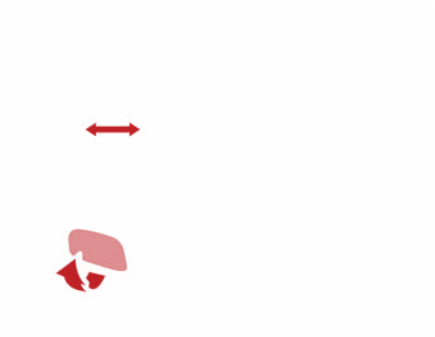
Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.

After installing the headrest, make sure that it is installed in the right direction.

A headrest installed reversely could increase whiplash injury during rear impact.

## Rear seat adjustment (7, 8 Seats)

### *Forward and backward (2nd row seat)*



OYPI039202

To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

### 7-seater HTX Seat

To move the seat inward, first turn the left/right control lever, and then move the seat to the farthest back position.

### *Left and Right (2nd row seat, HTX package)*



OYPI039293

To move the seat left side or right side:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move left side and right side without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

### *Seatback angle*

2nd row seat



OYPI039204

2nd row centre seat (for 8 Seats)



OYPI039206

2nd row seat for HTX package



OYPI039292

3rd row seat



OYPI039205

To recline the seatback:

1. Pull up the seatback recline lever (for 2nd row outboard seat) or strap (for 2nd row centre or 3rd row seat).
2. Hold the lever or strap and adjust the seatback to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever or strap and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever MUST return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)

### *Walk-in seat (2nd row seat)*

To get in or out from the 3rd row seat,

1. Lift the armrest up and lower the headrest to the lowest position (if necessary).
2. Pull up the walk-in lever (1) or pull the walk-in strap (2) on the 2nd row seat when the passenger gets out from 3rd row seat.



OYPI039209

3. At this time, 2nd row seat position will be changed to stand up position, and the headrest will be folded automatically.
   After getting in or out, push the 2nd row seat to the original position until it clicks into place and check the head rest position (unfolded position).
   Make sure that the seat is locked in place.



OYPI039210

**⚠ WARNING**

Never attempt to adjust the 2nd row seat whilst the vehicle is moving or the seat is occupied as the seat may suddenly move and cause the passenger on the seat to be injured.

### *Walk-in seat (2nd row seat for HTX package)*

To get in or out of the 3rd row seat:

1. Lift the armrest up , lower the headrests to the lowest position and slide the seat inside. (if necessary).
2. Pull the walk-in strap (1) or recline lever (2) on the 2nd row seat when the passenger gets in or out of the 3rd row seat.



OYPI039299

3. Push the 2nd row seat to forward. After getting out, push the 2nd row seat to the original position until it clicks into place. Make sure that the seat is locked in place. In the walk-in position, the front and back sliding function is not fixed.



OYPI039321

**⚠ WARNING**

Never attempt to adjust the 2nd row seat whilst the vehicle is moving or the seat is occupied as the seat may suddenly move and cause the passenger on the seat to be injured.

***Leg support (2nd row seat for HTX package)***



OYPI039294

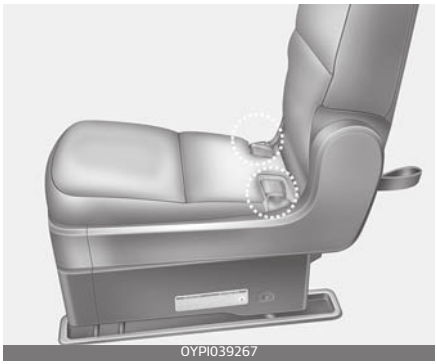
To use the leg support:

1. Pull the leg support lever up and hold it.
2. Adjust the angle and length of the leg support whilst holding the leg support. When using the leg rest, move the seat to the inner position, and then toward the back. If the seat is not moved far back, it may come in contact with the first row seat.
3. Release the lever and make sure the leg support is locked in place.

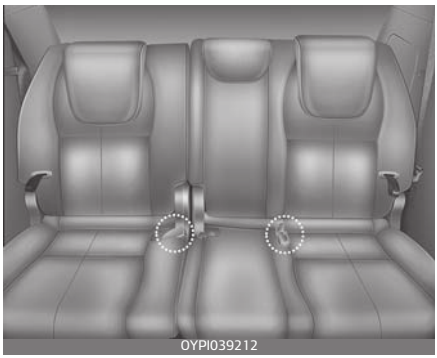
### *Folding the rear seat*

The rear seatbacks can be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

2nd row centre seat (for 8 Seats)




3rd row seat



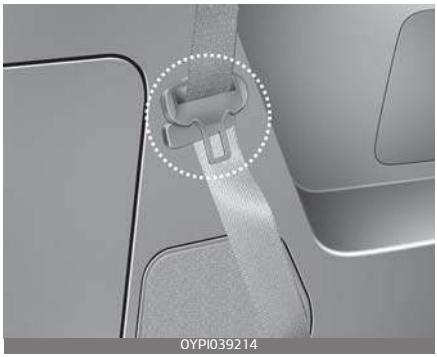

**⚠ WARNING**

**Folded down seatback**

Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback whilst the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop.

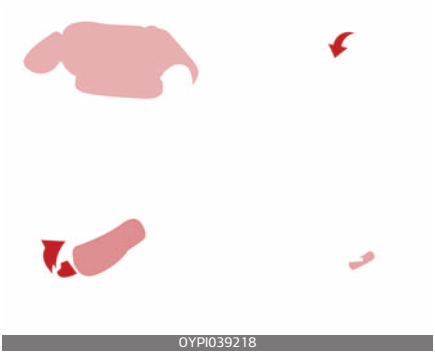
To fold down the rear seatback:

1. Insert the rear seat belt buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion, and insert the rear seat belt webbing in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.



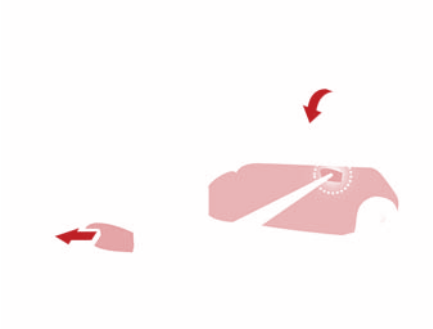

2. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
3. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.
4. Pull on the seatback folding lever or strap, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle. When you return the seatback to its upright position, always be sure it has locked into position by pushing on the top of the seatback.

2nd row seat



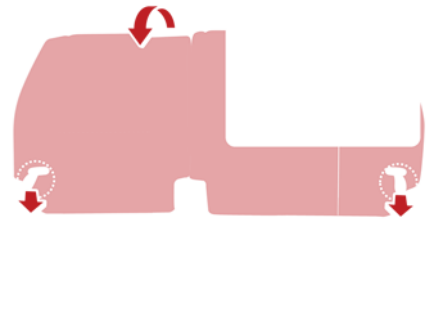
OYPI039218

2nd row centre seat (for 8 Seats)



OYPI039216

3rd row seat



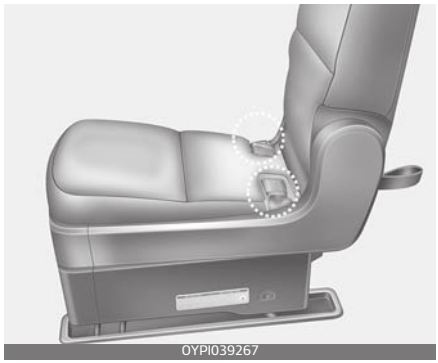
OYPI039219

5. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward by pulling on the folding lever or strap.
   Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place.
   Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

### *Removing the tumble seat (2nd row centre seat for 8 Seats)*



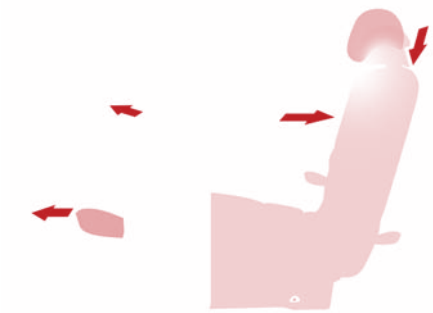
OYPI039220



OYPI039267

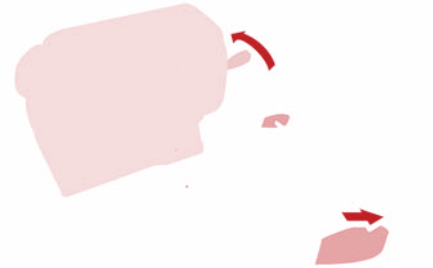
1. Insert the seat belt in the belt assembly cover.
2. Insert the seat belt buckle in the seat cushion pocket.

3. Lower the headrest to the lowest position.



OYPI039221

4. Slide the seat to the farthest rearward.
5. Fold the seat back by pull up the recline strap.
6. Pull the removal strap and lift the rear portion of the seat cushion.



OYPI039223

7. Pull up the catch release lever under the front of the seat cushion whilst reclining the folded seat rearward slightly to release the front catches from the anchors.



OYPI039227

8. Remove the entire seat from the floor.

### *Installing the tumble seat (2nd row centre seat for 8 Seats)*

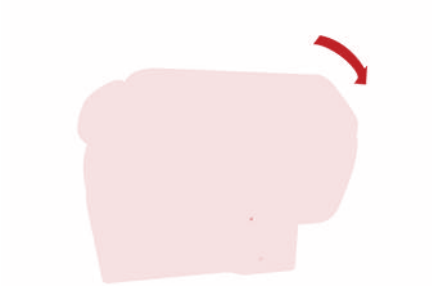
1. Put the front anchor strikers along the front anchors on the floor.



OYPI039228

2. Insert two front anchor strikers into the front anchors.

3. Lift the rear portion of the seat cushion then push down firmly to lock the catches into the rear anchors until an audible "click" is heard.



OYPI039225

4. Make sure the green mark on the rear seat cushion frame is visible and the catches are locked in position by moving the seat forward and backward or lifting the front portion of the seat. If the green mark is invisible and the seat moves, it is not locked properly.



OYPI039232

5. Pull up the seatback recline strap.
6. Lift and push the seatback backward firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
7. Return the seat belt to the proper position.

## ⚠ WARNING

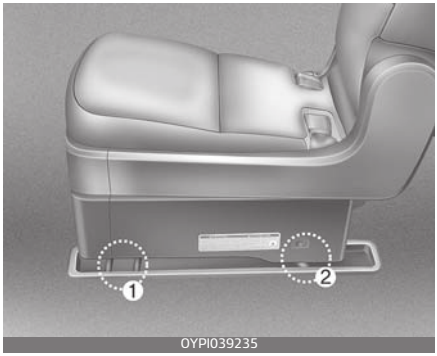
**Installing or removing the tumble seat**




OYPI039233

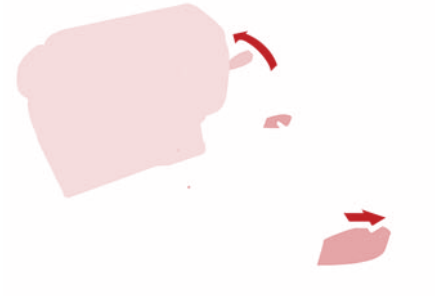
- Do not install or remove the tumble (2nd row centre) seat, if there are occupants in the 3rd row seats, as this may injure occupants.
- Rise up both side seatback before installing the tumble seat.

If the rear catches of the seat are locked into the rear anchors (2) whilst the front catches are not locked into the front anchors (1), do the followings to release the rear catches from the rear anchors.



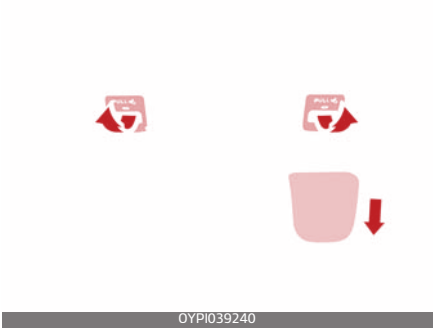
OYPI039235

Pull the removal strap and lift the rear portion of the seat cushion. Then the rear catches will be released. Remove the seat whilst lifting up the rear portion of seat cushion and then reinstalling the tumble seat.


OYPI039223

### *Stowing the rear seat – 3rd row seat*

The rear seat can be folded and stowed in the luggage compartment to provide additional cargo space.

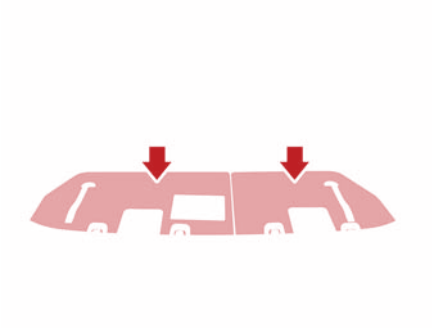

OYPI039240

To stow the rear seat:

1. Lower the headrest to the lowest position. To stow easily, adjust the seatback to upright position. (if necessary)
2. Pull up the seat by using the stowing lever.


OYPI039241

3. Stow the seat by pushing down firmly.



OYPI039242

Make sure there is no body or object around the seat and be careful not to injure your hands or body under the seat or in the moving parts when stowing or reinstalling the seat.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**To stow 3rd row seat**

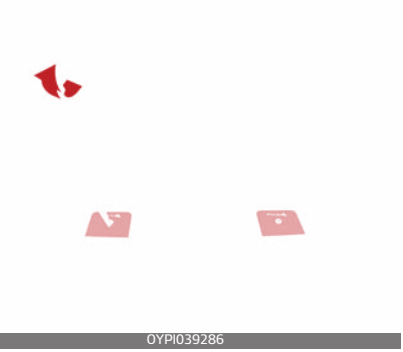
Do not stow the 3rd row seat when the seatback is folded. It may damage the 3rd seat mechanism.



OYPI039304

To use the rear seat:

1. Lift the seat by pulling up the stowing lever.



OYPI039286

2. Release the lever and push the seat forward firmly until it clicks into place to insert the catches into the anchors.



OYPI039243

## ✻ NOTICE

Do not push down the upper part of the seatback when pushing the seat forward. Doing so can prevent the catches from being locked in position.

3. Make sure the catches are locked in position by moving the seat forward and backward or lifting the front portion of the seat. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.


OYPI039287

4. Pull out and hold the folding strap.


OYPI039305

5. Hold the seat back when you adjust the seat back angle until it clicks into place and then release the folding strap.
   Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Cargo**

- Do not place heavy objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit vehicle occupants in a frontal collision.
- Do not place luggage on the folded down seat back of 3rd row seats. Put luggage behind 2nd row seats after the folded 3rd row seat is stowed away into the floor.

When you fold the rear (2nd and/or 3rd row) seatback, insert the buckle in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion. Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged by the rear seatback.

When returning the rear (2nd and/or 3rd row) seatbacks to the upright position, remember to return the rear shoulder belts to their proper position. Routing the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides will help keep the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.

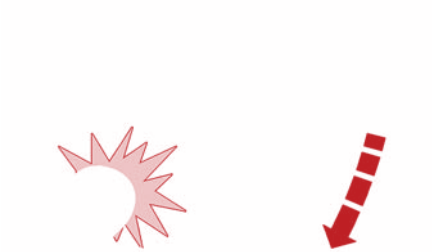
Make sure the engine is off, the automatic transmission is in P (Park) and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to

move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**3rd row seat**

- 3rd row occupants should always remain in the centre of the seat cushion so the occupants head is protected by the headrest.
- If not, the tailgate may hit the occupant's head, which could cause injury.



OYPI039330

***Armrest (2nd row seat)***

To use the armrest, swing down the armrest to the lowest position. (Type A)



OYPI039254

To use the armrest, press the release button on the armrest and adjust the angle to the desired position. And then release the button. (Type B)



OYPI039300

### *Seatback pocket (for HTX package)*

The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the 2nd row outboard seatbacks.



OYPI039255

**⚠ WARNING**

**Seatback pockets**

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.

**⚠ WARNING**

Unless the driver's position is properly set according to the driver's physical figure, do not fold the rear seat. It may increase bodily injuries in a sudden stop or collision.

### Headrest (for rear seat) (7, 8 Seats)

The rear seats are equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the occupant's safety and comfort.



OYPI039312

* There was no seat on rear 2nd-row centre at vehicle with 7 seating positions.

The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height as the centre of gravity of an occupant's head.



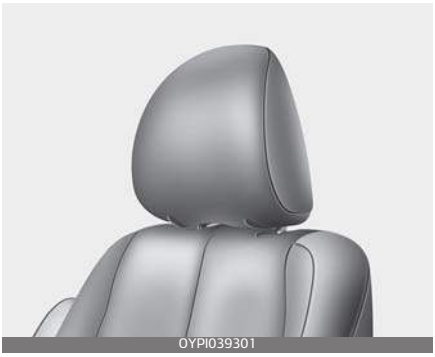
OYPI039331

Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes.

Also adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.

### *Adjusting the height up and down*

2nd row outboard




2nd row centre seat (for 8 Seats)




2nd row for HTX package

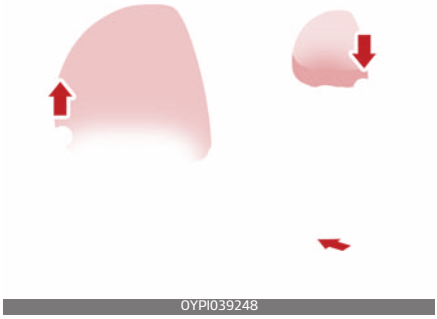



3rd row seat




To raise the headrest:

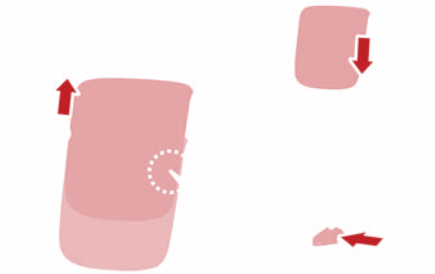
1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).



To lower the headrest:

1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

### *Removal and reinstallation (3rd row seat)*



OYPI039079

To remove the headrest:

1. Raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) whilst pulling the headrest up (2).

To reinstall the headrest:

1. Put the headrest poles (3) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1).
2. Adjust it to the appropriate height.

Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.

After installing the headrest, make sure that it is installed in the right direction.

A headrest installed reversely could increase whiplash injury during rear impact.

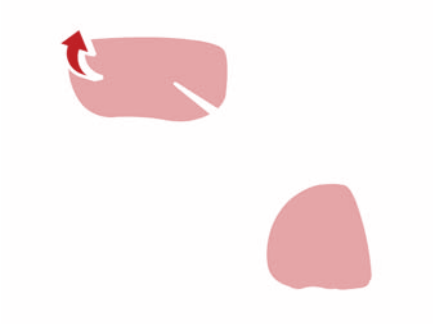
**NOTICE**

Do not remove the 2nd row outboard headrest. It cannot be removed completely due to the cable installed for headrest auto folding function.

### *2nd row outboard headrest*

The headrest will fold down automatically when the seat is in the walk in potion.

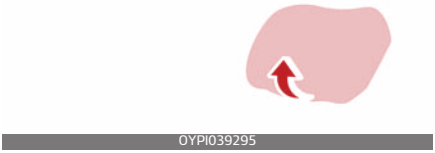
Always be sure the headrest has locked into position after you return the seatback.



OYPI039252

### *Forward and backward adjustment (2nd row seat for HTX package)*

The headrest may be adjusted forward or backward by pulling the lower part of the headrest forward or backward to the desired detent in the direction of the arrow. Adjust the headrest so that it properly supports the head and neck.



OYPI039295

### *Wing-out (2nd row seat for HTX package) (if equipped)*

For rear outboard passenger's comfort, the ends of the headrest can be adjusted inward.



OYPI039296

## Seat belts

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders.

### Seat belt restraint system

**⚠ WARNING**

- For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the car is moving.
- Seat belts are most effective when seatbacks are in the upright position.
- Children age 13 and younger must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 13 must be seated in the front seat, he/she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt can cause serious injuries in a crash. The shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.
- Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.

- Avoid wearing twisted seat belts. A twisted belt can't do its job as well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt webbing is straight and not twisted.
- Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. If the belt webbing or hardware is damaged, replace it.

**⚠ WARNING**

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

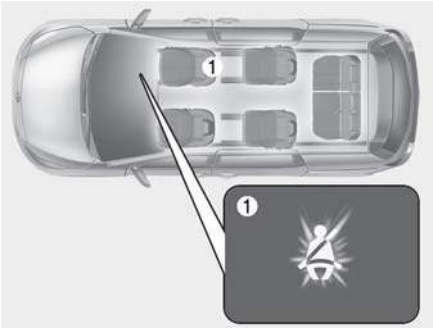
Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

**⚠ WARNING**

- No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.
- When you fasten the seat belt, be careful not to latch the seat belt in buckles of other seat. It's very dangerous and you may not be protected by the seat belt properly.
- Do not unfasten the seat belt and do not fasten and unfasten the seat belt repeatedly whilst driving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.
- When fastening the seat belt, make sure that the seat belt does not pass over objects that are hard or can break easily.
- Make sure there is nothing in the buckle. The seat belt may not be fastened securely.

## *Seat belt warning*

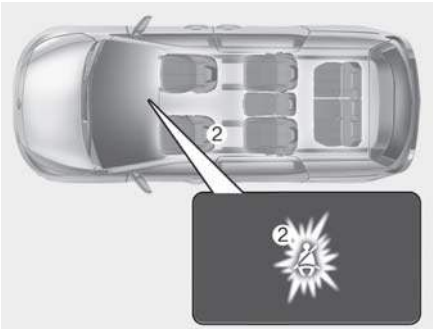
### Driver's seat belt warning (1)



OYPI039332

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.
If the driver's seat belt is unfastened after the ignition switch is ON, the seat belt warning light illuminates until the belt is fastened.
If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9 km/h, the illuminated warning light will start to blink until you drive under 6 km/h.
If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 20 km/h the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

### Front passenger's seat belt warning (2)



OYP034314R

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.
If the front passenger's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON or if it is disconnected after the ignition switch is turned ON, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate until the belt is fastened.
If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 9 km/h, the illuminated warning light will start to blink until you drive under 6 km/h.
If you continue not to fasten the seat belt and you drive over 20 km/h (12 mph) the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

**⚠ WARNING**

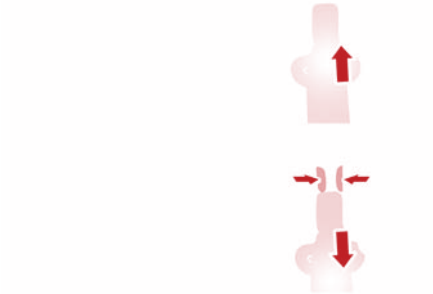
Riding in an improper position adversely affects the front passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger as to the proper seating instructions as contained in this manual.

**✻ NOTICE**

- You can find the front passenger's seat belt warning light on the centre fascia panel.
- Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.
- The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.

### *Seat belts – 3 point system*

#### Height adjustment



OYPI039056

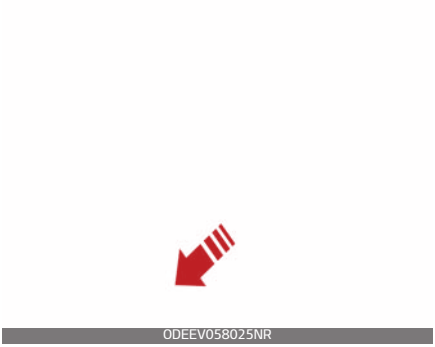
You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of 3 positions for maximum comfort and safety.
The height of the adjusting seat belt should not be too close to your neck. You will not be getting the most effective protection. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder near the door and not your neck.
To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.
To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) whilst pressing the height adjuster button (2).
Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.
Improperly positioned seat belts can cause serious injuries in an accident

**⚠ WARNING**

- Verify the shoulder belt anchor is locked into position at the appropriate height. Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.
- Failure to replace seat belts after an accident could leave you with damaged seat belts that will not provide protection in the event of another collision leading to personal injury or death. Replace

your seat belts after being in an accident as soon as possible.

**To fasten your seat belt:**



ODEEV058025NR

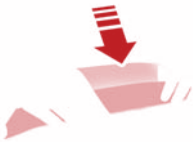
To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.
The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

**✻ NOTICE**

If you are not able to pull out the seat belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

**⚠ WARNING**

You should place the lap belt portion as low as possible and snugly across your hips, not on your waist. If the lap belt is located too high on your waist, it may increase the chance of injury in the event of a collision. Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather,one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.

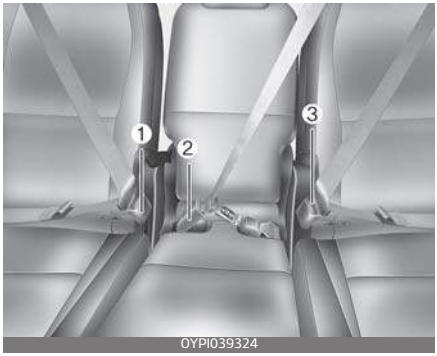


ODEEV058026NR

Never wear the seat belt under the arm near the door.

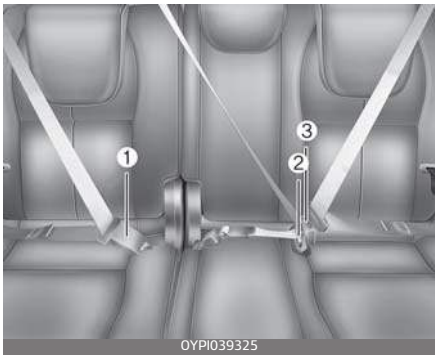
The seat belt should be locked into the buckle on each seat cushion to be properly fastened.

2nd row




* The 2nd-row centre seat is only for 8 seating positions

3rd row for 7, 8 seats/4th row for 9 seats

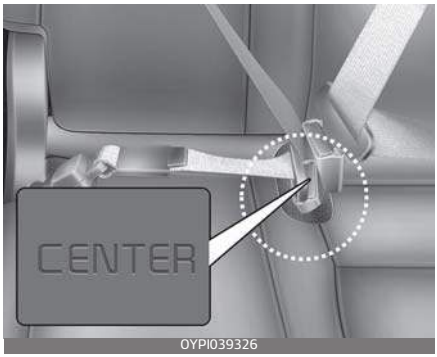



1. Rear right seat belt fastening buckle
2. Rear centre seat belt fastening buckle
3. Rear left seat belt fastening buckle

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not forcefully lock the left or right seat belt latch into the centre seatbelt buckle. This may cause damage to the centre buckle and prevent the buckle from properly latching in the future.

When using the rear centre seat belt, the buckle with the "CENTER" mark must be used.




**⚠ WARNING**

Prior to fastening the rear seat belts, ensure the latch matches the seat belt buckle. Forcefully fastening the left or right seat belt to the centre buckle can result in an improper fastening scenario that will not protect you in an accident.

### To release the seat belt:



ODEEV058078NR

The seat belt is released by pressing the release button (A) in the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.
If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

## *Seat belts – 3 Point rear centre belt (2nd, 3rd row centre seat for 8 Seats / 3rd row centre seat for 7 Seats / 4th row centre seat for 9 seats) (if equipped)*

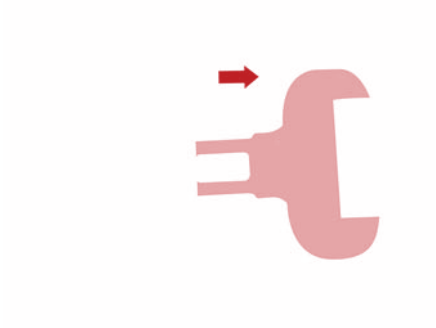
### To fasten the rear centre belt:

1. Pull out the mini tongue from hole on the belt assembly cover (1) and then slowly pull the seat belt out from the retractor.



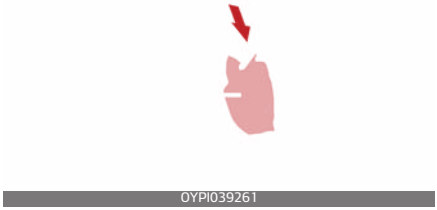
0YPI039259

2. Pull out the tongue plate from the holder on the seat belt (2).



0YPI039260

3. Insert the mini tongue (A) into the open end of the anchor connector (C) until an audible "click" is heard, indicating the latch is locked.
Make sure the belt is not twisted.



OYPI039261

4. Pull the tongue plate (B) and insert the tongue plate (B) into the open end of the buckle (D) until an audible "click" is heard, indicating the latch is locked.
Make sure the belt is not twisted.



OYPI039262

When using the rear centre seat belt, the buckle with the "CENTER" mark must be used.
There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks in the buckle. The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips, if you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

**⚠ WARNING**

When using the rear seat centre belt, you must lock all tongue plates and buckles. If any tongue plate or buckle is not locked, it will increase the chance of injury in the event of collision.

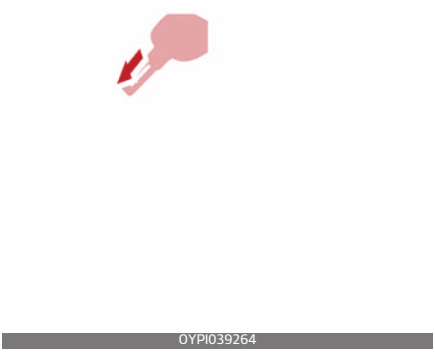
### To unfasten the rear centre belt

1. Press the release button on the buckle (D) and remove the tongue plate (B) from the buckle (D).



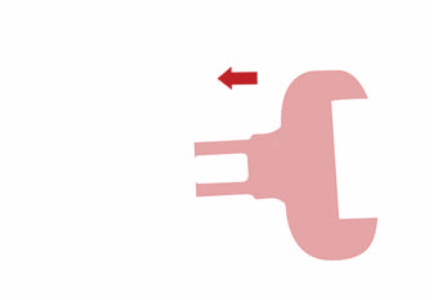
OYPI039263

2. To retract the rear centre seat-belt, insert the tongue plate or similar small rigid device into the web release hole (C). Pull up on the seat belt web (A) and allow the webbing to retract automatically.



OYPI039264

3. Insert the tongue plate into the holder (1) in seat belt and then insert the mini tongue into the hole on the belt assembly cover.



OYPI039265



OYPI039266

***Seat belts – 2 Point rear centre belt (2nd row centre seat for 8 seats) (if equipped)***

**To fasten your seat belt:**

1. To fasten a 2-point static type belt, insert the metal tab (1) into the locking buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.



OSP2I039047

2. Check to make sure the belt is properly locked and that the belt is not twisted.
   With a 2-point static type seat belt, the length must be adjusted manually so it fits snugly around your body.
3. Fasten the belt and pull on the loose end to tighten.



OYPI039335

[A] shorten, [B] Lengthen

The belt should be placed as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist. If the belt is too high, it could increase the possibility of your being injured in an accident.



OYPI039336

When using the rear centre seat belt, the buckle with the "CENTER" mark must be used.



OYPI039032

**To release the seat belt:**



OSP2I039049

- When you want to release the seat belt, press the button (1) in the locking buckle.

**⚠ WARNING**

The centre lap belt latching mechanism is different from those for the rear seat shoulder belts. When fastening the rear seat shoulder belts or the centre lap belt, make sure they are inserted into the correct

buckles to obtain maximum protection from the seat belt system and assure proper operation.

### *Stowing the rear seat belt*

4th row seat for 9 seats



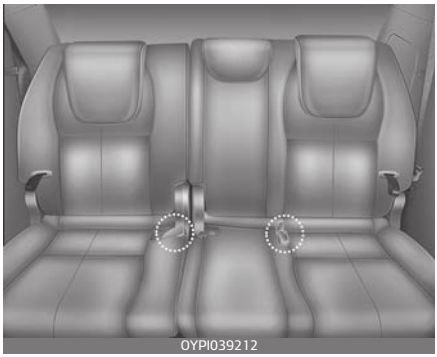
OYPI039033

2nd row centre seat for 8 seats



OYPI039034

3rd row seat for 7, 8 seats

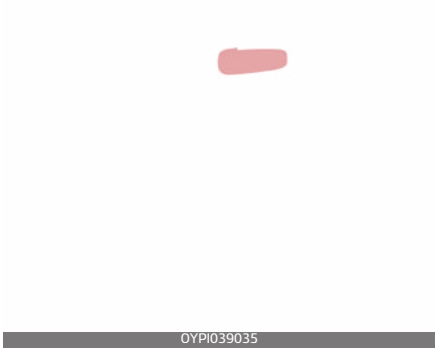


OYPI039212

The rear seat belt buckles can be stowed in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion when not in use.

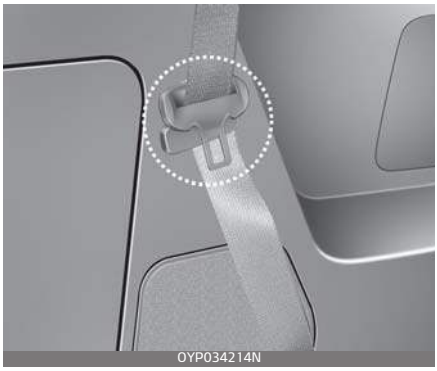
The centre seat belt can be stowed with the plate and webbing rolled in the pocket between the rear seatback and cushion.

4th row seat for 9 seats



OYPI039035

3rd row seat for 7,8 seats



OYP034214N

Routing the seat belt webbing through the rear seat belt guides will help keep the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats. After inserting the seat belt, tighten the belt webbing by pulling it up.

**⚠ CAUTION**

When using the seat belt, use it after taking it out of the guides.

If you pull the seat belt when it is stored in the guides, it may damage the guides and/or belt webbing.

## Pre-tensioner seat belt



OSP2I039024

Your vehicle is equipped with pre-tensioner seat belts at the front seating positions.

The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure that the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain collisions.

The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the collision is severe enough.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

**⚠ WARNING**

For your safety, be sure that the belt webbing is not loose or twisted and always sit properly on your seat.

## ✻ NOTICE

**If equipped with rollover sensor**

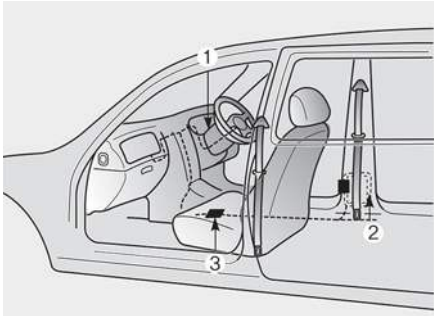
The pre-tensioner will activate not only in a frontal collision but also in a side collision or rollover, if the vehicle is equipped with a side or curtain air bag.

## ✻ NOTICE

**Without rollover sensor**

The pre-tensioner will activate not only in a frontal collision but also in a side collision, if the vehicle is equipped with a side or curtain air bag.

The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration:




OSP2I039025

1. SRS air bag warning light
2. Retractor pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module

## ⚠ WARNING

To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:

1. The seatbelt must be working correctly and adjusted to the proper position. Please read and follow all of the important information and precautions about your vehicle's occupant safety features – including seat belts and air bags – that are provided in this manual.
2. Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.

## ✻ NOTICE

- When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.
- Although it is harmless, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.
- Because the sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after

the ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" position, and then it should turn off.

### ⚠ CAUTION

If the pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, the SRS air bag warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### ⚠ WARNING

- Pre-tensioners seat belts systems are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.
- The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.
- Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. Have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.
- Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings not to strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.
- Always wear the seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.
- If the vehicle or pre-tensioner seat belt must be discarded, contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.
- Body work on the front area of the vehicle may damage the pre-tensioner seat belt system. Therefore, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.

## Seat belt precautions

**⚠ WARNING**

All occupants of the vehicle must wear their seat belts at all times. Seat belts and child restraints reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries for all occupants in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Without a seat belt, occupants could be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle. Properly worn seat belts greatly reduce these hazards.

Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant seat contained in this manual.

### *Infant or small child*

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat.

For more information about the use of these restraints, refer to "Child restraint system (CRS)" on page 3-55.

**⚠ WARNING**

Every person in your vehicle needs to be properly restrained at all times, including infants and children. Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior. Always use a child restraint appropriate for your child's height and weight.

**✻ NOTICE**

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Safety Standards of your country. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to "Child restraint system (CRS)" on page 3-55.

### *Larger children*

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened and snugged on the hips and as low as possible. Check if the belt fits periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 13) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children age 13 and under should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child age 13 and under in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they need to be returned to a child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Shoulder belts on small children**

- Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- If seat belts are not properly worn and adjusted on children, there is a risk of death or serious injury.

### *Pregnant women*

The use of a seat belt is recommended for pregnant women to lessen the chance of injury in an accident. When a seat belt is used, the lap belt portion should be placed as low and snugly as possible on the hips, not across the abdomen. For specific recommendations, consult a physician.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Pregnant women**

Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the fetus is located or above the abdomen where the belt could crush the fetus during an impact.

### *Injured person*

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

### *One person per belt*

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

### *Do not lie down*

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front seats should be in an upright position when the car is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front seat is in a reclined position.

**⚠ WARNING**

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt causing serious internal injuries or the occupant's neck could strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.

## Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

**⚠ WARNING**

- When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after the rear seatback was folded down, be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Be sure that the webbing or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat. A seat belt with damaged webbing or buckle will not be as strong and could possibly fail during a collision or sudden stop, resulting in serious injury. If the webbing or buckles are damaged, get them replaced immediately.

- Seat belts can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather.
  They could burn infants and children.

### *Periodic inspection*

It is recommended that all seat belts be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

### *Keep belts clean and dry*

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

### *When to replace seat belts*

Entire in-use seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. In this case, have the system replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Child restraint system (CRS)

**Our recommendation: Children always in the rear**

**⚠ WARNING**

Always properly restrain children in the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when riding in the rear seats. Never place a rearward-facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated.

Children under age 13 should always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Children too large for a Child Restraint System must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have regulations which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint Systems.

The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements

in your country, and where you are travelling.

Child Restraint Systems must be properly installed in the vehicle seat. Always use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of your country.

### *Child Restraint System (CRS)*

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rearward-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the seat of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Always follow the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.
- Always properly restrain your child in the Child Restraint System.
- Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate protection in an accident.
- After an accident, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)

When selecting a Child Restraint System for your child, always:

- Make sure the Child Restraint System has a label certifying that it meets the applicable Safety Standards of your country.
  A Child Restraint System may only be installed if it was approved in accordance with the requirements of relevant regulation.
- Select a Child Restraint System based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a Child Restraint System that fits the vehicle seating position where it will be used.
  For the suitability of Child Restraint Systems on the vehicle's seating positions, please refer to "Suitability of each seating position for ISOFIX child restraint systems (9 seats)" on page 3-66, "Suitability of each seating position for ISOFIX child restraint systems (7, 8 Seats)" on page 3-67.

- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the Child Restraint System.

### *Child restraint system types*

There are three main types of Child Restraint Systems:
- Rearward-facing CRS
- Forward-facing CRS

They are classified according to the child's age, height and weight.

### *Rearward-facing Child Restraint System*



ODEEV058035NR

A rearward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep the child positioned in the Child Restraint Systems and reduce the stress to the fragile neck and spinal cord.

All children under the age of one year must always ride in a rearward-facing Child Restraint System. There are different types of rearward-facing Child Restraint Systems: infant-only Child Restraint Systems can only be used rearward-facing. Convertible and 3-in-1 Child Restraint Systems typically have higher height and weight limits for the rearward-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rearward-facing for a longer period of time.

Keep using Child Restraint Systems in the rearward-facing position as long as children fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

### *Forward-facing Child Restraint System*



ODEEV058036NR

A forward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

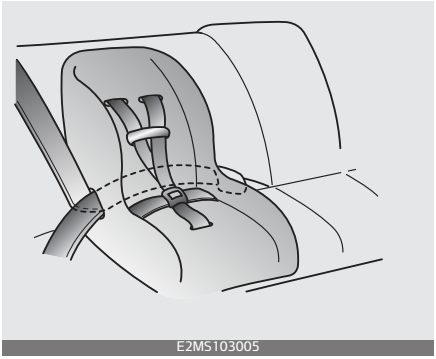
Once your child outgrows the forward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a booster seat.

### Installing a child restraint system with a lap/shoulder belt

To install a child restraint system on the seat, do the following:

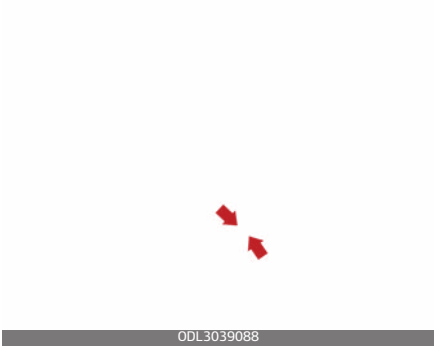
1. For stable and safe installation of child restraint system, adjust the vehicle seat (seatback angle and/or seat forward and backward) so that your child can fit in the child restraint system in a comfortable manner. To properly accommodate child restraint systems in all adjustment positions, the front passenger seat may be moved rearwards with the seat back not passing beyond the seat belt shoulder anchor.

   Place the child restraint system in the seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the child restraint system, following the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.



E2MS103005

2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound.
   Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.



ODL3039088

3. Buckle the seat belt and allow the seat belt to take up any slack. After installation of the child restraint system, try to move it in all directions to be sure the child restraint system is securely installed.




If you need to tighten the belt, pull the webbing toward the retractor. When you unbuckle the seat belt and allow it to retract, the retractor will automatically revert back to its normal seated passenger emergency locking usage condition.

### *Suitability of each seating position for "universal" category belted child restraint systems (9 seats)*

Use child restraint systems that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children.

When using the child restraint systems, refer to the following table.

U: Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

| Mass Group | Seating Position | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Front Passenger | Rear 2nd-row Outboard | Rear 2nd-row Centre*1 | Rear 3rd-row Outboard | Rear 3rd-row Centre*1 | Rear 4th-row Outboard | Rear 4th-row Centre |
| 0: up to 10 kg | U | X | UF | U | X | X | X |
| 0+: up to 13 kg | U | X | UF | U | X | X | X |
| I: 9 to 18 kg | U | X | UF | U | X | X | X |
| II: 15 to 25 kg | U | X | UF | U | X | X | X |
| III: 22 to 36 kg | U | X | UF | U | X | X | X |

*1. There was no seat on rear 2nd-row and 3rd-row centre at vehicle with 9 seating positions.

### *Suitability of each seating position for "universal" category belted child restraint systems (7, 8 Seats)*

Use child restraint systems that have been officially approved and are appropriate for your children.

When using the child restraint systems, refer to the following table.

U: Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

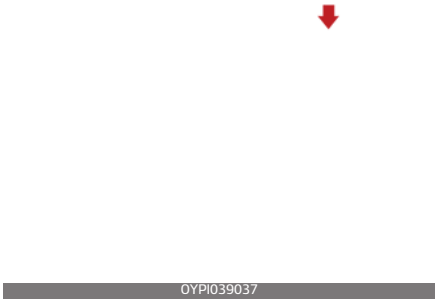
| Mass Group | Seating Position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Front Passenger | Rear 2nd-row Outboard | Rear 2nd-row Centre*1 | Rear 3rd-row Right seat | Rear 3rd-row Centre | Rear 3rd-row Left seat |
| 0: up to 10 kg | U | U | UF | U | UF | U |
| 0+: up to 13 kg | U | U | UF | U | UF | U |
| I: 9 to 18 kg | U | U | UF | U | UF | U |
| II: 15 to 25 kg | U | U | UF | U | UF | U |
| III: 22 to 36 kg | U | U | UF | U | UF | U |

*1. There was no seat on rear 2nd-row centre at vehicle with 7 seating positions.

### *Securing a child restraint system with tether anchor system (if equipped)*

The tether anchor is located at the bottom of the seatback.

2nd row outboard seat for 9 seats



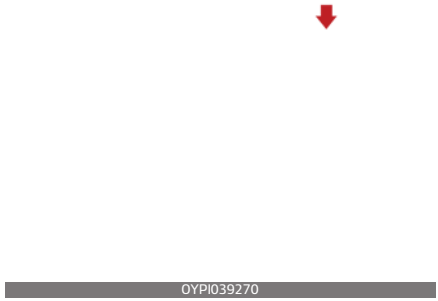
OYPI039037

2nd row outboard seat for 7, 8 Seats



OYPI039269

3rd row right seat for 7, 8 Seats



OYPI039270

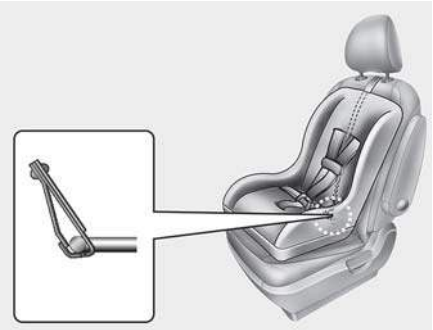
Child restraint system tether anchorages are located on the back of the rear cushions.

1. Route the child restraint system top tether over the seatback. For vehicles with adjustable headrest, route the top tether under the headrest and between the headrest posts, otherwise route the top tether over the top of the seatback. In case of interference between the child restraint system and the headrest remove the particular head restraint for better fitment of the child restraint system.

2nd row outboard seat for 9 seats




2nd row outboard seat for 7, 8 Seats




2. Connect and tighten the top tether to the corresponding child restraint system to secure the child restraint system.

**⚠ WARNING**

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint system is not properly anchored to the car and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint system. Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.

Never mount more than one child restraint system to a single top tether or to a single tether anchorage point. The increased load caused by multiple child restraint system may cause the top tethers or anchorage points to break, causing serious injury or death.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Child restraint system check**

Check that the child restraint system is secure by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Incorrectly fitted child restraint systems may swing, twist, tip or separate causing death or serious injury.

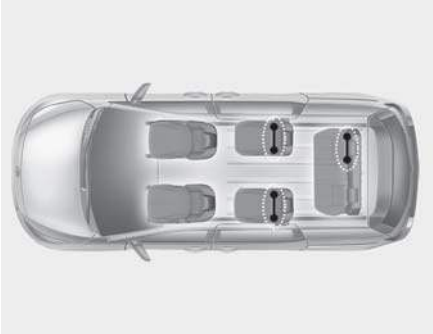
**⚠ WARNING**

**Child restraint system anchorage**

- Child restraint system anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraint systems. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.
- The top tether may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

### *Securing a child restraint system with "ISOFIX" system and "Tether Anchorages"*

(for 7, 8 seats)



OYPI039289

* The centre seat on 2nd-row is only for vehicle with 8 seating positions.

(for 9 seats)



OYPI039102

ISOFIX is a standardized method of fitting child restraint systems that eliminates the need to use the standard adult seat belt to secure the child restraint system in the vehicle.

This causes a much more secure and positive location with the added benefit of easier and quicker installation.

An ISOFIX child restraint system may only be installed if it has vehicle specific or universal approval in accordance with the requirements of relevant regulation.

There are ISOFIX symbols located on the lower portion of the 2nd row outboard seat backs (for 7, 8, 9 seats), 3rd row outboard seat backs (for 9 seats) and 3rd row right seat back (for 7, 8 seats). These symbols indicate the position of the ISOFIX anchors for child restraint systems.



OYPI039277

1. ISOFIX Anchor Position Indicator
2. ISOFIX Anchor

The 2nd row outboard seats (for 7, 8, 9 seats), 3rd row outboard seats (for 9 seats) and 3rd row right seat (for 7, 8 seats) are equipped with a pair of ISOFIX anchorages as well as a corresponding tether anchorage on the back side of the rear cushions. The ISOFIX anchorages are located between seat cushion and back rest, marked with the ISOFIX icon.



OYPI039277

1. ISOFIX Anchor Position Indicator
2. ISOFIX Anchor

For installation, child restraint system ISOFIX connectors have to engage with the vehicles ISOFIX anchorages (listen for a CLICK, check potential visual indicators on the child restraint system and cross-check by pulling).

Child restraint systems with universal approval to relevant regulation. need to be fixed additionally with a top tether strap connected to the corresponding tether anchorage point in the back rest.

The installation and the use of a child restraint system has to be done according to the installation manual, which is provided with the ISOFIX child restraint system.

For stable and safe installation of child restraint system, adjust the seat position (seat-back angle and/or seat forward and backward) so that your child can fit in the child restraint system in a comfortable manner.

**⚠ WARNING**

- When using the vehicle's "ISOFIX" system to install a child restraint system in the rear seat, all unused vehicle rear seat belt metal latch plates or tabs must be latched securely in their seat belt buckles and the seat belt webbing must be retracted behind the child restraint system to prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts. Unlatched metal latch plates or tabs may allow the child to reach the unretracted seat belts which may result in strangulation and a serious injury or death to the child in the child restraint system.
- Do not place anything around the lower anchors. Also make sure that the seat belt is not caught in the lower anchors.

To secure the child restraint system

1. To engage the child restraint system to the ISOFIX anchor, insert the child restraint system latch into the ISOFIX anchor. Listen for the audible "click" sound.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not allow the rear seat belt webbing to get scratched or pinched by the ISOFIX-seat latch and ISOFIX anchor during installation.

2. Connect the top tether strap to the corresponding tether anchorage and tighten it. (Refer to the previous page.)
   - Do not install a child restraint system at the centre of the rear seat using the vehicle's ISOFIX anchors. The ISOFIX anchors are only provided for the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Do not misuse the ISOFIX anchors by attempting to attach a child restraint system in the middle of the rear seat to the ISOFIX anchors.

   In a crash, the child restraint system ISOFIX attachments may not be strong enough to secure the child restraint system properly in the centre of the rear seat and may break, causing serious injury or death.
   - Do not mount more than one child restraint system to an ISOFIX anchorage point. The improper increased load may cause the anchorage points or tether anchor to break, causing serious injury or death.
   - Attach the ISOFIX or ISOFIX-compatible child restraint system only to the appropriate locations shown in the illustration.
   - Always follow the installation and use instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

## *Suitability of each seating position for ISOFIX child restraint systems (9 seats)*

IUF = suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system in this mass group and/or this size class.

* ISOFIX child restraint system size classes and fixtures

A – ISO/F3: Full-Height Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 720 mm)

B – ISO/F2: Reduced-Height Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 650 mm)

B1 – ISO/F2X: Reduced-Height Second Version Back Surface Shape Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 650 mm)

C – ISO/R3: Full-Size Rearward-Facing toddler CRS

D – ISO/R2: Reduced-Size Rearward-Facing toddler CRS

E – ISO/R1: Infant-Size Rearward-Facing CRS

F – ISO/L1: Left Lateral Facing position CRS (carry-cot)

G – ISO/L2: Right Lateral Facing position CRS (carry-cot)

| Mass Group | Size Clas | Fixture | Vehicle ISOFIX positions | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Front Passen-ger | Rear 2nd-row Outboard | Rear 3rd-row Outboard | Rear 4th-row Others |
| Carry-cot | F | ISO/L1 | X | X | X | X |
| | G | ISO/L2 | X | X | X | X |
| 0: up to 10 kg | E | ISO/R1 | X | IUF | X | X |
| 0+: up to 13 kg | E | ISO/R1 | X | IUF | X | X |
| | D | ISO/R2 | X | IUF | X | X |
| | C | ISO/R3 | X | IUF | X | X |
| I: 9 to 18 kg | D | ISO/R2 | X | IUF | X | X |
| | C | ISO/R3 | X | IUF | X | X |
| | B | ISO/F2 | X | IUF | X | X |
| | B1 | ISO/F2X | X | IUF | X | X |
| | A | ISO/F3 | X | IUF | X | X |

## *Suitability of each seating position for ISOFIX child restraint systems (7, 8 Seats)*

IUF = suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system in this mass group and/or this size class.

* ISOFIX child restraint system size classes and fixtures

A – ISO/F3: Full-Height Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 720 mm)

B – ISO/F2: Reduced-Height Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 650 mm)

B1 – ISO/F2X: Reduced-Height Second Version Back Surface Shape Forward-Facing toddler CRS (height 650 mm)

C – ISO/R3: Full-Size Rearward-Facing toddler CRS

D – ISO/R2: Reduced-Size Rearward-Facing toddler CRS

E – ISO/R1: Infant-Size Rearward-Facing CRS

F – ISO/L1: Left Lateral Facing position CRS (carry-cot)

G – ISO/L2: Right Lateral Facing position CRS (carry-cot)



| Mass Group | Size Class | Fixture | Vehicle ISOFIX positions | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Front Passenger | Rear 2nd-row Outboard | Rear 2nd-row Centre *1 | Rear 3rd-row Outboard right seat | Rear 3rd-row Centre | Rear 3rd-row Outboard Left seat |
| Carry-cot | F | ISO/L1 | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| | G | ISO/L2 | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| 0: up to 10 kg | E | ISO/R1 | X | IUF | X | IUF | X | X |
| 0+: up to 13 kg | E | ISO/R1 | X | IUF | X | IUF | X | X |
| | D | ISO/R2 | X | IUF | X | IUF | X | X |
| | C | ISO/R3 | X | IUF | X | IUF | X | X |
| I: 9 to 18 kg | D | ISO/R2 | X | IUF | X | IUF | X | X |
| | C | ISO/R3 | X | IUF | X | IUF | X | X |
| | B | ISO/F2 | X | IUF | X | IUF | X | X |
| | B1 | ISO/F2X | X | IUF | X | IUF | X | X |
| | A | ISO/F3 | X | IUF | X | IUF | X | X |

*1. There was no seat on rear 2nd-row centre at vehicle with 7 seating.

## Air bag-supplemental restraint system (if equipped)

9 Seats



OYPI039061

* The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Driver's front air bag
2. Passenger's front air bag
3. Side air bag*
4. Curtain air bag*

* : if equipped

7, 8 Seats



OYPI039278

* The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

* There was no seat on rear 2nd-row centre at vehicle with 7 seating positions.

1. Driver's front air bag
2. Passenger's front air bag
3. Side air bag*
4. Curtain air bag*

* : if equipped

## ⚠ WARNING

- Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimise the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or in most rollover situations.
- SRS and pre-tensioners contain explosive chemicals.
  If scraping a vehicle without removing SRS and pre-tensioners from a vehicle, it may cause fire. Before scraping a vehicle, contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Keep the SRS parts and wirings away from water or any liquid. If the SRS components are inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it may cause fire or severe injury.

### How does the air bag system operate

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bags inflate instantly in the event of serious frontal or side collision (if equipped with side air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.

## ✻ NOTICE

**if equipped with rollover sensor**

Also, the air bags inflate instantly in the event of a rollover (if equipped with a side air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.

- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.
  Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining, factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant. It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.

- In order to help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to get the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of air bag design. However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- **There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bags in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag. The front passenger should always move their seat as far back as possible and sit back in their seat.
- Air bag inflates instantly in an event of a collision, passengers may be injured by the air bag expansion force if they are not in a proper position.
- Air bag inflation may cause injuries including facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns.

3

### *Noise and smoke*

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.**

Though smoke and powder are non-toxic, it may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc.). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult the doctor if the symptom persists.

**⚠ WARNING**

- When the air bags deploy, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel and/or instrument panel and/or in both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors are very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage areas internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.
- Do not install or place any accessories near air bag deployment areas, such as the instrument panel, windows, pillars, and roof rails.

***Front passenger's air bag warning label for child restraint system***




**⚠ WARNING**

Never place a rear facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, unless the passenger-side air bag is deactivated. An inflating passenger-side air bag could impact the rear-facing child restraint and kill the child.

In addition, we recommend that you do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger's seat either. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it could cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.

If your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, you can activate or deactivate the front passenger's air bag when necessary.

For more details, please refer to "Child restraint system (CRS)" on page 3-55. (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- Never put a child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it can cause serious or fatal injuries.
- When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of a vehicle equipped with side and/or curtain air bags, be sure to install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and securely lock the child restraint system in position. Inflation of side and/or curtain air bags could cause serious injury or death to an infant or child.

## Air bag warning and indicator

### *Air bag warning light*

The purpose of the air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).

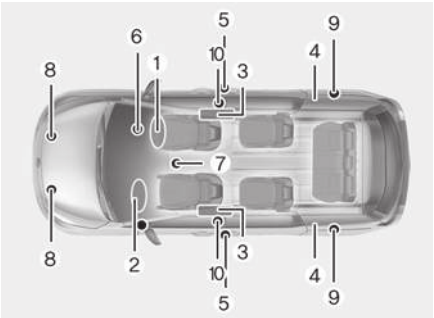

ODEEV068100NR

When the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning light should illuminate for approximately 6 seconds, then go off.

Have the system checked if:

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

## SRS components and functions



OYPI039279

* The actual position of SRS components may differ from the illustration.

The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module
2. Passenger's front air bag module
3. Side air bag modules*
4. Curtain air bag modules*
5. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies
6. Air bag warning light
7. SRS control module (SRSCM) / Rollover sensor*
8. Front impact sensor
9. Side impact sensors*
10. Side pressure impact sensor*

*: if equipped

The SRSCM continually monitors all elements whilst the ignition switch is ON to determine if a frontal, near-frontal impact or side impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, after which the air bag warning light should go out.

## ⚠ WARNING

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the SRS. In this case, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

Driver's front air bag (1)



ODEEV058048NR

The air bag modules are located both in the centre of the steering wheel and in the front passenger's panel above the glove box. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

Driver's front air bag (2)



ODEEV058049NR

Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

Driver's front air bag (3)



ODEEV058050NR

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

Passenger's front air bag



ODEEV058051NR

**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not install or place any accessories (drink holder, CD holder, sticker, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle with a passenger's air bag. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.
- When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside the vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel surface.
  It may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.

**⚠ WARNING**

- If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous – the air bags are packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and a mild soap after an accident in which the air bags were deployed.

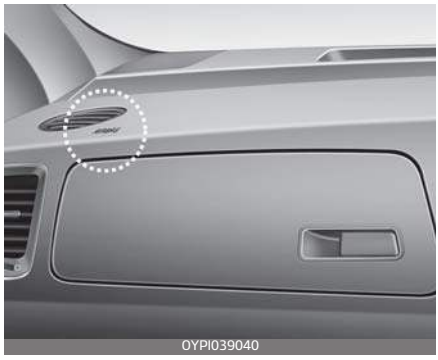
- The SRS can function only when the ignition key is in the ON position. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on whilst driving, the SRS is not working properly. In this case, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition key or turn off the ENGINE START/STOP button. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.

## Driver's and passenger's front air bag

Driver's front air bag




Passenger's front air bag




Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The indications of the system's presence are the letters "AIR BAG" intagliated on the air bag pad cover in the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the centre of the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel above the glove box.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

**⚠ WARNING**

The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions. The passenger's arms and hands should be placed on their laps.

**⚠ WARNING**

Always use seat belts and child restraints – every trip, every time, everyone! Air bags inflate with considerable force and in the blink of an eye. Seat belts help keep occupants in proper position to obtain maximum benefit from the air bag. Even with air bags, improperly and unbelted occupants can be severely injured when the air bag inflates. Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.

To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries and receive the maximum safety benefit from your restraint system:

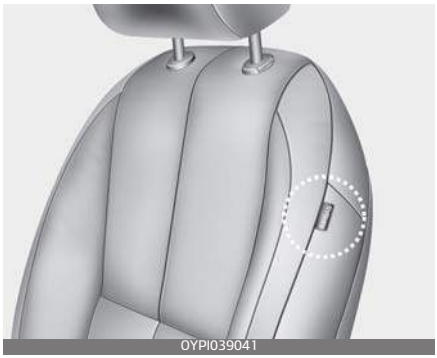
- Never place a child in any child or booster seat in the front seat.
- ABC – Always Buckle Children in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride.
- Front and side air bags can injure occupants improperly positioned in the front seats.
- Move your seat as far back as practical from the front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.
- You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags. Improperly positioned drivers and passengers can be severely injured by inflating air bags.
- Never lean against the door or centre console – always sit in an upright position.
- No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.

- Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental deployment of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.
- If the SRS air bag warning light remains illuminated whilst the vehicle is being driven, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Air bags can only be used once – have the system replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- The SRS is designed to deploy the front air bags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Additionally, the air bags will only deploy once. Seat belts must be worn at all times.
- Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side–impact, rear–impact or rollover crashes. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.
- A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.
- Children age 13 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over age 13 must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.
- For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimise the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash. All occupants should sit upright with the seat back in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the ignition key is removed.

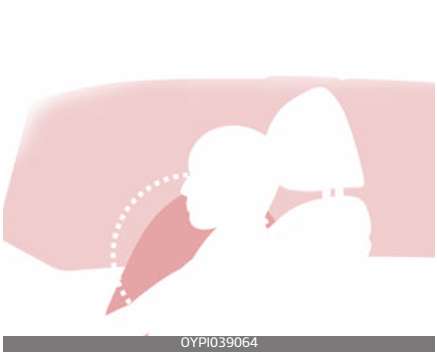
- The SRS air bag system must deploy very rapidly to provide protection in a crash. If an occupant is out of position because of not wearing a seat belt, the air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.

### Side air bag (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front seat.



OYPI039041



OYPI039064

* The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

The side air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. The side air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact situations.

**✻ NOTICE**

**if equipped with rollover sensor**

- Also, both side of the side air bags deploy in certain rollover situations.
- The side air bag may deploy when the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.

**⚠ WARNING**

- The side air bag is supplemental to the driver's and the passenger's seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times whilst the vehicle is in motion. The air bags deploy only in certain side impact conditions or rollover conditions (only the vehicle equipped with rollover sensor) severe enough to cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.
- For best protection from the side air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side air bag, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened.
- Do not use any accessory seat covers.
- Use of seat covers could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.
- To prevent unexpected deployment of the side air bag that may result in personal injury, avoid impact to the side impact sensor when the ignition key is on.
- If the seat or seat cover is damaged, have the system serviced by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

**No attaching objects**

- Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar.
- Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side air bag inflates.
- Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bags.

### Curtain air bag (if equipped)

9 seats



0YPI039065

7, 8 Seats



OYPI039333

9 seats



OYPI039066

7, 8 Seats



OYPI039334

* The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

* The centre seat on 2nd-row is only for vehicle with 8 seating positions.

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact situations, collisions from the front or rear of the vehicle or in most rollover situations.

## * NOTICE

**If equipped with rollover sensor**

- Also, both sides of the curtain air bags deploy in certain rollover situations.
- The curtain air bag may deploy when the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.

## ⚠ WARNING

- In order for side and curtain air bags to provide the best protection, both front seat occupants and both outboard rear occupants

should sit in an upright position with the seat belts properly fastened.
Importantly, children should sit in a proper child restraint system in the rear seat.

- When children are seated in the rear outboard seats, they must be seated in the proper child restraint system.
  Make sure to put the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and secure the child restraint system in a locked position.
- Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.
- Never try to open or repair any components of the curtain air bag system. If necessary, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Failure to follow the above mentioned instructions can result in injury or death to the vehicle occupants in an accident.

**⚠ WARNING**

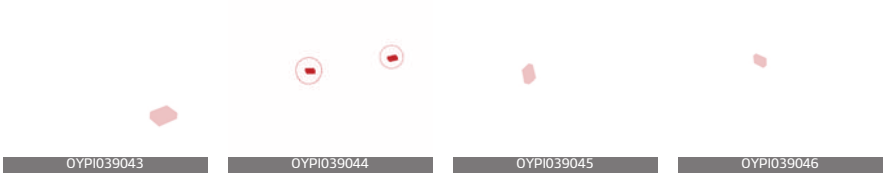
**No attaching objects**

- Do not place any objects over the air bag. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar, roof side rail.
- Do not hang hard or breakable objects on the clothes hanger.
- Do not hang heavy items on the coat hooks for safety reasons.

## Air bag collision sensors




0YPI039042



0YPI039043 0YPI039044 0YPI039045 0YPI039046

* The actual shape and position of sensors may differ from the illustration.

1. SRS control module/Rollover sensor (if equipped)
2. Front impact sensor
3. Side impact sensor (if equipped)
4. Side pressure impact sensor (if equipped)

**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bag or sensors are installed. This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.
- If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.
  Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. Have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, body or B pillar where side collision sensors are installed. In this case, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag(s) in certain collisions. Installing bumper guards or replacing a bumper with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicles collision and air bag deployment performance.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If equipped with rollover sensor**

If your vehicle is equipped with side and curtain air bag, set the ignition switch to OFF or ACC position when the vehicle is being towed.

The side and curtain air bag may deploy when the ignitions is ON, and the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.

### Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision? (Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the air bag)

There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.

These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.

### *Air bag inflation conditions*

#### *Front air bags*



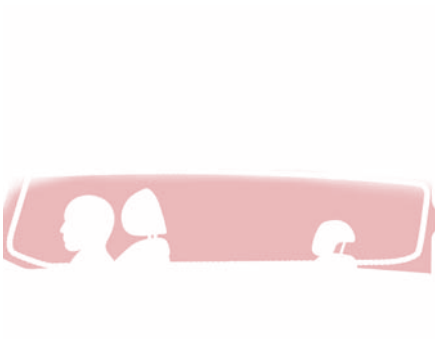
OYPI039067

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.

#### *Side and curtain air bags (if equipped)*



OYPI039068



OYPI039066

* The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Side and/or curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

*** NOTICE**

**if equipped with rollover sensor**

Also, the side and curtain airbags are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

Although the front air bags (driver's and front passenger's air bags) are designed to inflate only in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side air bags (side and/or curtain air bags) are designed to inflate only in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other colli-

sions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads or sidewalks, air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

### *Air bag non-inflation conditions*

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.



OYPI039070

- Air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.



OYPI039071

- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.



OYPI039068

- However, if equipped with side and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate depending on the intensity, vehicle speed and angles of impact.
- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.



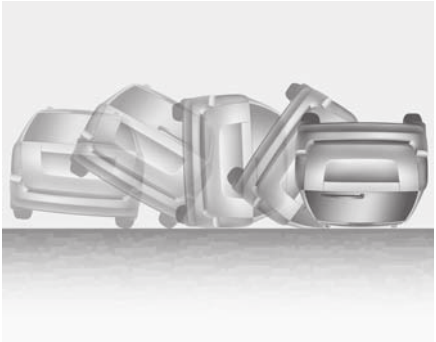
OYPI039073

- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to "ride" under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly replaced by such "under-ride" collisions.



OYPI039074

- Air bags may not inflate in roll-over accidents because the vehicle can not detect rollover accident. However, side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over following (or after) side impact collision.



1VQA2091

## ✻ NOTICE

**If equipped with rollover sensor**

However, if equipped with side and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate in a rollover, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.

## NOTICE

**Without rollover sensor**

However, side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled overby a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side air bags and curtain air bags.

- Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.



OYPI039075

### SRS care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself.

If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## WARNING

- Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.
- For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.
- No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to inflate.
- If the air bags inflate, have the system replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental

inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.
- If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorised Kia dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.
- If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on flooring, you shouldn't try to start the engine; in this case, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**Additional safety precautions**

- **Never let passengers ride in the cargo area or on top of a folded-down back seat.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor.
- Passengers should not move out of or change seats whilst the vehicle is moving. A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.
- Each seat belt is designed to restrain one occupant. If more than one person uses the same seat belt, they could be seriously injured or killed in a collision.
- Do not use any accessories on seat belts. Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Passengers should not place hard or sharp objects between themselves and the air bags. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap or in your mouth can result in injuries if an air bag inflates.
- Keep occupants away from the air bag covers. All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor. If occu-

pants are too close to the air bag covers, they could be injured if the air bags inflate.
- Do not attach or place objects on or near the air bag covers. Any object attached to or placed on the front or side air bag covers could interfere with the proper operation of the air bags.
- Do not modify the front seats. Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.
- Do not place items under the front seats. Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.
- Never hold an infant or child on your lap. The infant or child could be seriously injured or killed in the event of a crash. All infants and children should be properly restrained in appropriate child safety seats or seat belts in the rear seat.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Sitting improperly or out of position can cause occupants to be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle resulting in serious injury or death.
- Always sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with your seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and your feet on the floor.

### *Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle*

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

### Air bag warning label

Air bag warning labels are attached to alert driver and passengers of potential risk of air bag system.




Note that these government warnings focus on the risk of children. We also want you to be aware of the risks adults are exposed to which have been described in previous pages.

# Features of your vehicle 4


**Keys ..... 4–7**

• Record your key number ..... 4–7
• Key operations ..... 4–7
• Immobiliser system ..... 4–8

**Remote keyless entry ..... 4–10**

• Remote keyless entry system operations ..... 4–10
• Transmitter precautions ..... 4–11

**Smart key ..... 4–12**

• Smart key functions ..... 4–13
• Smart key precautions ..... 4–14
• Battery replacement ..... 4–15
• Smart key immobiliser system ..... 4–16

**Theft-alarm system ..... 4–17**

• Armed stage ..... 4–17
• Theft-alarm stage ..... 4–19
• Disarmed stage ..... 4–19

**Door locks ..... 4–20**

• Operating door locks from outside the vehicle ..... 4–20
• Operating door locks from inside the vehicle ..... 4–22
• Door lock/unlock features ..... 4–25
• Child-protector rear door lock ..... 4–25

**Tailgate ..... 4–26**

• Opening the tailgate ..... 4–26
• Closing the tailgate ..... 4–27
• Emergency tailgate safety release ..... 4–27

**Power sliding door and power tailgate ..... 4–29**

• Automatic stop and reversal ..... 4–31

# 4 Features of your vehicle


• How to reset the power sliding door and power tailgate ..... 4–32
• Power door ON/OFF button ..... 4–33
• Power sliding door operation ..... 4–33
• Power tailgate operation ..... 4–36
• Power tailgate non-opening conditions ..... 4–38
• Power tailgate opening height user setting ..... 4–39
• Smart tailgate ..... 4–39
• Emergency tailgate safety release ..... 4–43
**Windows ..... 4–44**
• Window opening and closing ..... 4–45
**Bonnet ..... 4–49**
• Opening the bonnet ..... 4–49
• Bonnet open warning ..... 4–50
• Closing the bonnet ..... 4–50
**Fuel filler door ..... 4–51**
• Opening the fuel filler door ..... 4–51
• Closing the fuel filler door ..... 4–51
• Emergency fuel filler lid release ..... 4–53
**Sunroof ..... 4–54**
• Sliding the sunroof ..... 4–55
• Tilting the sunroof ..... 4–56
• Sunshade ..... 4–57
• Resetting the sunroof ..... 4–57
• Rear sunroof lock ..... 4–57
• Sunroof open warning ..... 4–58
**Steering wheel ..... 4–58**
• Power steering ..... 4–58
• Tilt & telescopic steering wheel ..... 4–59

# Features of your vehicle 4


• Horn ..... 4-60
**Mirrors ..... 4-60**
• Inside rearview mirror ..... 4-60
• Outside rearview mirror ..... 4-62
**Instrument cluster ..... 4-66**
• Adjusting Instrument Cluster Illumination ..... 4-66
• Gauges ..... 4-67
• Transmission shift indicator ..... 4-70
**LCD display ..... 4-70**
• LCD display modes ..... 4-71
**LCD displays ..... 4-77**
• Trip information (trip computer) ..... 4-77
• Service mode ..... 4-80
• Driving info display ..... 4-81
• LCD display messages ..... 4-81
**Warning and indicator lights ..... 4-85**
• Warning lights ..... 4-85
• Indicator lights ..... 4-92
**Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) ..... 4-95**
• Operation of Reverse Parking Distance Warning system ..... 4-96
• Non-operational conditions of Reverse Parking Distance Warning system ..... 4-96
• Reverse Parking Distance Warning system precautions ..... 4-97
• Self-diagnosis ..... 4-98
**Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) ..... 4-99**
• Operation of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning system ..... 4-100

# 4 Features of your vehicle


• Non-operational conditions of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning ..... 4-102
• Self-diagnosis ..... 4-103
**Rear View Monitor (RVM) ..... 4-104**
**Lighting ..... 4-105**
• Battery saver function ..... 4-105
• Headlight escort function ..... 4-105
• Lighting control ..... 4-105
• Operating high beam ..... 4-107
• Operating turn signals and lane change signals ..... 4-108
• Operating front fog light ..... 4-108
**Wipers and washers ..... 4-110**
• Operating windscreen washers ..... 4-110
• Operating rear window wiper and washer switch ..... 4-111
**Interior lights ..... 4-112**
• Map lamp ..... 4-112
• Room lamp ..... 4-113
• Luggage room lamp ..... 4-114
• Glove box lamp ..... 4-115
• Vanity mirror lamp ..... 4-115
**Welcome system ..... 4-115**
• Headlight (headlamp) escort function ..... 4-115
• Pocket lamp ..... 4-115
• Interior light ..... 4-116
**Defroster ..... 4-116**
• Operating rear window defroster ..... 4-116
**Climate control system ..... 4-117**
• System operation ..... 4-117
• Climate control air filter ..... 4-119

# Features of your vehicle 4


• Air conditioning refrigerant label ..... 4-120
• Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant ..... 4-121
**Automatic climate control system ..... 4-122**
• Heating and air conditioning automatically ..... 4-123
• Heating and air conditioning manually ..... 4-124
• Rear climate control ..... 4-130
• Automatic intake control system ..... 4-133
**Windscreen defrosting and defogging ..... 4-134**
• Defogging inside windscreen ..... 4-135
• Defrosting outside windscreen ..... 4-135
• Defogging logic ..... 4-135
• Auto Defogging System (ADS) ..... 4-136
**Storage compartment ..... 4-137**
• Centre console storage ..... 4-138
• Glove box ..... 4-139
• Sunglass holder ..... 4-139
**Interior features ..... 4-140**
• Cigarette lighter ..... 4-140
• Ashtray ..... 4-140
• Cup holder ..... 4-141
• Bottle holder ..... 4-142
• Sun visor ..... 4-142
• Air ventilation seat ..... 4-143
• Power outlet ..... 4-144
• USB charger ..... 4-145
• Wireless smart phone charging system ..... 4-147
• Clock ..... 4-149
• Coat hook ..... 4-150

# 4 Features of your vehicle


• Floor mat anchor(s) ..... 4–150
• Side curtain ..... 4–151
• Luggage net holder ..... 4–152
**Exterior features ..... 4–153**
• Roof rack ..... 4–153
**Audio system ..... 4–154**
• Antenna ..... 4–154
• USB port ..... 4–154
• How vehicle radio works ..... 4–155

# FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

## Keys

### Record your key number

The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set.

If you lose your keys, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the key code number and keep it in a safe place (not in the vehicle).

### Key operations

- Used to start the engine.
- Used to lock and unlock the doors.
- Used to lock and unlock the glove box.

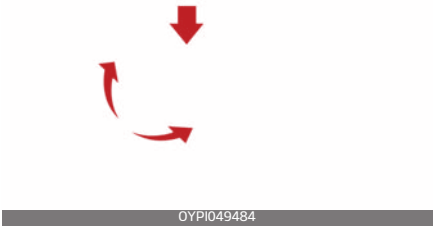
### *Folding key*

Type A



OYPI049333

Type B



OYPI049484

To unfold the key:

- press the release button then the key will unfold automatically.

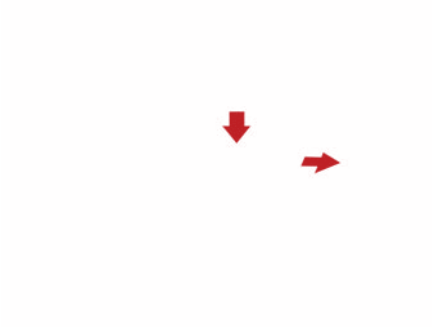
To fold the key:

- fold the key manually whilst pressing the release button.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.

### *Smart key (if equipped)*



OYPI049002

To pull out the mechanical key:

- press and hold the release button and remove the mechanical key.

To reinstall the mechanical key:

- put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Ignition key (Smart key)**

Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the ignition key (smart key) is dangerous even if the key is not in the ignition switch or start button is ACC or ON position.

Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition switch or press the start button. The ignition key (smart key) would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or even death. Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.

**⚠ WARNING**

Kia recommends to use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.

**Immobiliser system**

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic engine immobiliser system to reduce the risk of unauthorised vehicle use.

Your immobiliser system is comprised of a small transponder in the ignition key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

***Vehicles without smart key system***

With the immobiliser system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON, it checks and determines and verifies if the ignition key is valid or not.

If the key is valid, the engine will start.

If the key is invalid, the engine will not start.

***To deactivate the immobiliser system:***

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position.

***To activate the immobiliser system:***

Turn the ignition key to the OFF position. The immobiliser system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

***Vehicles with smart key system***

Whenever the ENGINE START/STOP buttons are changed to the ON position, the immobiliser system checks and verifies if the key is valid or not.

If the key is valid, the engine will start.

If the key is invalid, the engine will not start.

***To deactivate the immobiliser system***

Change the ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.

***To activate the immobiliser system***

Change the ENGINE START/STOP button to the OFF position. The immobiliser system activates automatically. Without a valid smart key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

**⚠ WARNING**

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your Immobiliser password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential. Do not leave this number anywhere in your vehicle.

**✻ NOTICE**

When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobiliser keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separately in order to avoid a starting malfunction.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch. Metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal and may prevent the engine from being started.

**✻ NOTICE**

If you need additional keys or lose your keys, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ CAUTION**

The transponder in your ignition key is an important part of the immobiliser system. It is designed to give years of trouble- free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobiliser system malfunction could occur.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not change, alter or adjust the immobiliser system because it could cause the immobiliser system to malfunction. In this case, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the immobiliser system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

## Remote keyless entry (if equipped)

### Remote keyless entry system operations

Folding key




0YPI049544

Smart key




0YPI049003

***Lock (1)***

All doors are locked if the lock button is pressed whilst all doors are closed.

The hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors are locked.

However, if any door, engine bonnet or tailgate remains open, the hazard warning lights will not operate. If all doors, engine bonnet and tailgate are closed after the lock button is pressed, the hazard warning lights will blink once.

### *Unlock (2)*

All doors are unlocked if the unlock button is pressed.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked.

After pressing this button, the doors will lock automatically unless you open any door within 30 seconds.

### *Left or Right power sliding door opening or closing (3), (4) (if equipped)*

This function will be operated when the power door ON/OFF button is ON (not depressed).

- Press and hold the power sliding door open (or close) button (3), (4) more than 1 second.

For detailed information refer to "Power sliding door and power tailgate (if equipped)" on page 4-29.

### *Tailgate open (5) (if equipped)*

If you press this button for longer than a second, the lock will be released or the tailgate will be opened according to the options of the vehicle.

Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.

### *Panic (6) (if equipped)*

If you press the key's panic button in an emergency situation, the alarm system will be activated and alert others around you of the emergency situation.

1. Press the panic button for a few seconds.
2. The horn sounds and hazard warning light flash for a few seconds.

To stop the horn and lights, press any button on the smart key.

### *Start-up*

You can start the vehicle without inserting the key.

* For more information, refer to "ENGINE START/STOP button (if equipped)" on page 5-9.

### Transmitter precautions

**✻ NOTICE**

The transmitter will not work if any of the following occurs:

- The ignition key is in the ignition switch.
- You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).
- The battery in the transmitter is weak.

- Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- The weather is extremely cold.
- The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.

When the transmitter does not work correctly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- If the transmitter is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the transmitter could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/ receiving emails.
  Avoid placing the transmitter and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Transmitter**

Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid as it can become damaged and not function properly.

## Smart key (if equipped)

Type A




OYP044025L

Type B




OYP044003L

With a smart key, you can lock or unlock a door and even start the engine without inserting the key.

The functions of buttons on a smart key are similar to the folding key.

## Smart key functions



OYPI049462

Carrying the smart key, you may lock and unlock the vehicle doors (and tailgate). Also, you may start the engine. Refer to the following, for more details.

### *Locking*

Pressing the button of the front driver side door handles with all doors closed and any door unlocked, locks all the doors. If all doors and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors are locked.

The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in) from the driver side door handle. If you want to make sure that a door has locked or not, you should check the door lock button inside the vehicle or pull the driver side door handle.

Even though you press the driver side door handle buttons, the doors will not lock and the chime will sound for 3 seconds if any of following occur:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the tailgate is open.

### *Unlocking*

Pressing the button of the front driver side door handles with all doors closed and locked, unlocks all the doors. The hazard warning lights blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked.

The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m (28~40 in) from the front driver side door handle.

When the smart key is recognised in the area of 0.7~1 m (28~40 in) from the front driver side door handle, other people can also open the door without possession of the smart key.

After pressing the button, the doors will lock automatically unless you open any door within 30 seconds.

***Left or Right power sliding door opening or closing (if equipped)***

This function will be operated when the power door ON/OFF button is ON (not depressed).

Using the power sliding door handle
1. Carry the smart key.
2. Pull the power sliding door handle once.
3. The power sliding door will be opened or closed automatically. At this time, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound two times.

***Tailgate open (if equipped)***

1. Carry the smart key.
2. Press the tailgate handle button.
3. When all doors are locked, the hazard warning lights will blink two times.

Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate will lock automatically.

**✻ NOTICE**

The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 ~ 1 m (28 ~ 40 in) from the tailgate handle.

***Start-up***

You can start the vehicle without inserting the key.

* For more information, refer to "ENGINE START/STOP button (if equipped)" on page 5-9.

**Smart key precautions**

**✻ NOTICE**

- If, for some reason, you happen to lose your smart key, you will not be able to start the engine. Tow the vehicle, if necessary, contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- A maximum of 2 smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you lose a smart key, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- The smart key will not work if any of the following occurs:
  - The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the smart key.
  - The smart key is near a mobile two-way radio system or a cellular phone.
  - Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.

When the smart key does not work properly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**Smart key damage**

Do not drop, get wet or expose the smart key to heat or sunlight, or it will be damaged.

### Battery replacement

The transmitter or smart key uses a 3 volt lithium battery which will normally last for several years.



OYPI049005

When replacement is necessary, use the following procedure.

1. Remove the mechanical key.
2. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the transmitter or smart key cover.
3. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery position.
4. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For transmitter or smart key replacement, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- The keyless entry system transmitter is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use or replace the battery, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter or smart key to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.
- To avoid damaging the transmitter or smart key, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.

## ⚠ CAUTION



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.

Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

### Smart key immobiliser system

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic engine immobiliser system to reduce the risk of unauthorised vehicle use.

Your immobiliser system is comprised of a small transponder in the smart key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

With the immobiliser system, whenever you turn the ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position by pressing the button whilst carrying the smart key, it checks and determines and verifies if the smart key is valid or not.

If the key is determined to be valid, the engine will start.

If the key is determined to be invalid, the engine will not start.

***To deactivate the immobiliser system:***

Turn the ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position by pressing the button whilst carrying the smart key.

***To activate the immobiliser system:***

Turn the ENGINE START/STOP button to the OFF position. The immobiliser system activates automatically.

Without a valid smart key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

## ✻ NOTICE

When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobiliser keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separate in order to avoid a starting malfunction.

## ✻ NOTICE

If you need additional keys or lose your keys, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

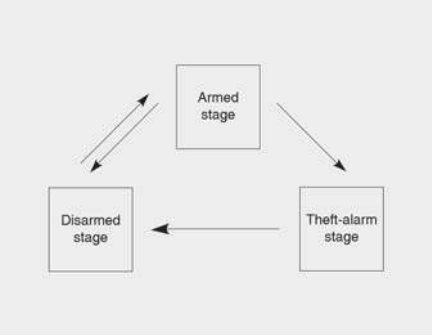
**⚠ WARNING**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

## Theft-alarm system (if equipped)

Theft-alarm system is designed to provide protection from unauthorised entry into the vehicle.

Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system will have a label attached to the vehicle with the following words:
1. WARNING
2. SECURITY SYSTEM




This system is operated in three stages:
- Armed stage
- Theft-alarm stage
- Disarmed stage

If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the hazard warning lights.

### Armed stage

Theft Alarm System goes to Armed stage after 30 seconds from the doors are locked by switch on a Outside Door Handle/by a lock button on transmitter.

### *Using the smart key*

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Make sure that all doors (and tailgate) and the engine bonnet are closed and latched.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Lock the doors by pressing the button of the front outside door handle with the smart key in your possession.
     After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights operate once to indicate that the system is armed.
     If any door remains open, the doors won't lock and the chime will sound for 3 seconds. Close the door and try again to lock the doors.
     If tailgate or engine bonnet remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if the tailgate and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once.
   - Lock the doors by pressing the lock button on the smart key.
     After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will operate once to indicate that the system is armed.
     If any door (and tailgate) or engine bonnet remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if all doors (and tailgate) and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights blink once.

### *Using the transmitter*

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Turn off the engine and remove the ignition key from the ignition switch.
2. Make sure that all doors (and tailgate), the engine bonnet are closed and latched.
3. Lock the doors by pressing the lock button on the transmitter.
   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.
   If any door (and tailgate) or engine bonnet remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if all doors (and tailgate) and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights blink once.

### Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs whilst the system is armed.

- A door is opened without using the transmitter (or smart key).
- The tailgate is opened without using the transmitter (or smart key).
- The engine bonnet is opened.

The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for approximately 30 seconds. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the transmitter (or smart key).

### Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when:

#### *Transmitter*

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The engine is started.
- The ignition switch is in the "ON" position for 30 seconds or more.

#### *Smart key*

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The button of the front outside door is pressed whilst carrying the smart key.
- The engine is started.

After the doors are unlocked, the hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.

After pressing the unlock button, if any door (or tailgate) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

## ✻ NOTICE

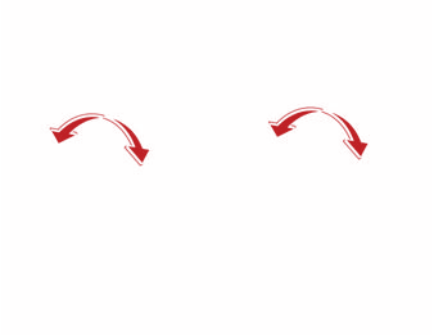
### Non-immobiliser system

- Avoid trying to start the engine whilst the alarm is activated. The vehicle starting motor is disabled during the theft-alarm stage. If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch, turn the ignition switch to the ON position and wait for 30 seconds. Then the system will be disarmed.

## Door locks

Know how to use the door lock so that you can lock or unlock the door if necessary.

### Operating door locks from outside the vehicle



OYPI049009

- Turn the key clockwise to unlock and counterclockwise to lock.
- If you lock/unlock the driver's door with a key, all vehicle doors will lock/unlock automatically.
- Doors can also be locked and unlocked with the transmitter.
- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure the doors are closed securely.

**NOTICE**

- In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
- If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.

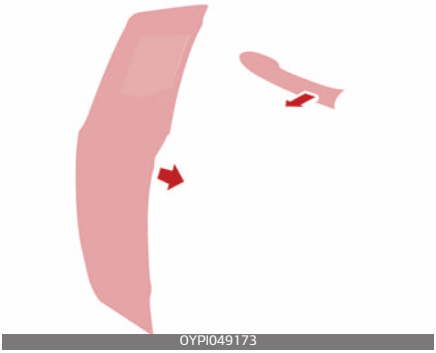
**WARNING**

If people must spend a longer time in the vehicle whilst it is very hot or cold outside, there is rick of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

**CAUTION**

Do not frequently repeat opening and closing of doors, or apply excessive force to a door whilst the door closer is operating.

- Once the doors are unlocked, it may be opened by pulling the door handle and sliding the door towards the rear of the vehicle. (for manual sliding doors)



OYPI049173

- Once the doors are unlocked, it may be opened by pulling the door handle once. And then the sliding door will be opened. (for power sliding doors)

## ⚠ WARNING

**Partially opened sliding door**

When opening the rear sliding doors, make sure the doors are fully opened and locked in position. The rear sliding doors may move unintentionally causing injuries if the doors are only partially opened.

## ⚠ CAUTION

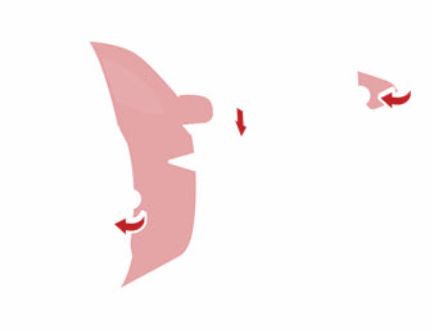
The left sliding door cannot be opened when the fuel filler lid is open. However, if the fuel filler lid is opened after the door is opened slightly, the left slidingdoor can be slide rearward. Close the left sliding door to prevent possible damage to the door or the fuel filler lid.



OYPI049172

- When the door is fully open, the door will lock into an open position. To close the door, pull out the door handle (1) and sliding the door (2) towards the front of vehicle. (for manual sliding doors)
- When the door is fully open, the door will lock into an open position. To close the door, pull out the door handle (1) once. And then the sliding door will be closed. (for power sliding doors)

- To lock a door without the key, push the inside door lock button (1) or central door lock switch (2) to the "Lock" position when the ignition switch is OFF position and close the door (3).



OYPI049010

- If you lock the door with the central door lock switch (2), all vehicle doors will lock automatically.

## ✻ NOTICE

Always remove the ignition key or press the ENGINE START/STOP button to the OFF position, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.

### Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

You can operate door locks with the door lock button or central door lock switch.

#### *With the door lock button*



OYPI049011

- To unlock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the "Unlock" position. The red mark (2) on the button will be visible.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the "Lock" position. If the door is locked properly, the red mark (2) on the door lock button will not be visible.
- To open a door, pull the door handle (3) outward (for front door).
- To open a door, pull the door handle rearward (for sliding door)
- If the inner door handle of the driver's (or front passenger's) door is pulled when the door lock button is in the lock position, the button will unlock and the door will open. (if equipped)

- Front doors cannot be locked if the ignition key is in the ignition switch and any front door is opened.
- Doors cannot be locked if the smart key is in the vehicle and an door is open.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Door lock malfunction**

If a power door lock ever fails to function whilst you are in the vehicle, try one or more of the following techniques to exit:

- Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) whilst simultaneously pulling on the door handle.
- Operate the other door locks and handles, front and rear.
- Lower a front window and use the key to unlock the door from outside.
- Move to the cargo area and open the tailgate.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not pull the inner door handle of driver's (or passenger's) door whilst the vehicle is moving.

***With central door lock switch***

Driver's door



OYPI049012

Passenger's door



OYPI049013

Operate by pressing the central door lock switch.

- To lock all vehicle doors, press the left portion (1) for driver side of the switch.
- To unlock all vehicle doors, press the right portion (2) for driver side of the switch.

If the key is in the ignition switch (or if the smart key is in the vehicle) and any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the left portion (1) for driver side of the central door lock switch is pressed.

## ⚠ WARNING

**Doors**

- The doors should always be fully closed and locked whilst the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door. Locked doors will also discourage potential intruders when the vehicle stops or slows down.
- Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door. Opening a door when something is approaching can cause damage or injury.

## ⚠ WARNING

**Unlocked vehicles**

Leaving your vehicle unlocked can invite theft or possible harm to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle whilst you are gone. Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.

## ⚠ WARNING

**Unattended children**

An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Furthermore, children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**Sliding door hinge**



0YPI049175

When getting in and out of the sliding door, do not step on the sliding door hinge or drop or put heavy objects on the hinge. The door may not open or close normally by damaging the door hinge or wire part.

### Door lock/unlock features

The vehicle is equipped with door lock/unlock features for the safety and convenience of passengers.

#### *Impact sensing door unlock system*

All doors will automatically unlock when an impact causes the air bags to deploy.

#### *Speed sensing door lock system*

All doors will automatically lock after the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

You can activate or deactivate the auto door lock/unlock features in the vehicle. Refer to "User settings mode" on page 4-73.

### Child-protector rear door lock

The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle.



OYPI049014

The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child safety lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child safety lock is in the lock position (1), the rear door will not open if the inner door handle is pulled.

To lock the child safety lock, insert a key (or screwdriver) into the hole and turn it to the lock position.

To allow a rear door to be opened from inside the vehicle, unlock the child safety lock.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Rear door locks**

If children accidentally open the rear doors whilst the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out and be severely injured or killed. To prevent children from opening the rear doors from the inside, the rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

# Tailgate

## ⚠ WARNING

**Exhaust fumes**

If you drive with the tailgate opened, you will draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause serious injury or death to vehicle occupants.

If you must drive with the tailgate opened, keep the air vents and all windows open so that additional outside air comes into the vehicle.

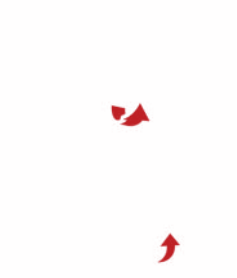
## ⚠ WARNING

**Rear cargo area**

Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.

### Opening the tailgate

The tailgate is locked or unlocked when all doors are locked or unlocked with the key, transmitter, smart key or central door lock/ unlock switch.



0YPI049015

1. To unlock the tailgate only, press the tailgate unlock button on the transmitter or smart key for approximately 1 second.
2. To open the tailgate, press the handle and pull it up.

Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate locks automatically. (All doors must be locked.)

## ✻ NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

**⚠ WARNING**

The tailgate swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the tailgate.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the tailgate gas lifters and attaching hardware if the tailgate is not closed prior to driving.

### Closing the tailgate



OYPI049016

1. Lower and push down the tailgate firmly.
2. Make sure that the tailgate is securely latched.

**⚠ WARNING**

Make sure your hands, feet and other parts of your body are safely out of the way before closing the tailgate.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Make sure nothing is near the tailgate latch and striker whilst closing the tailgate. It may damage the tailgate's latch.

### Emergency tailgate safety release



OYPI049320

Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate. When someone is inadvertently locked in the cargo area, the tailgate can be opened by pushing the release lever and pushing open the tailgate.

**⚠ WARNING**

- For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release lever in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.
- No one should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.
- Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use with extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is in motion.

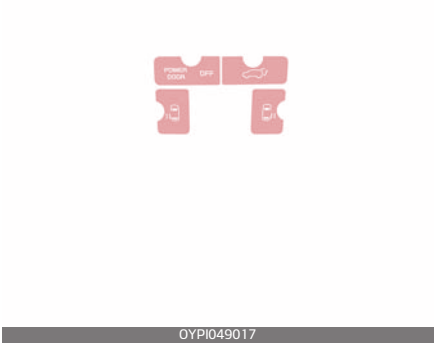
**⚠ WARNING**

Do not grasp the part supporting the tailgate (gas lifter), as this may cause serious injury.


OYPI049452

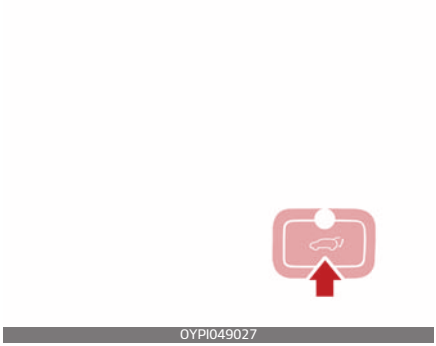
## Power sliding door and power tailgate (if equipped)

On the overhead console



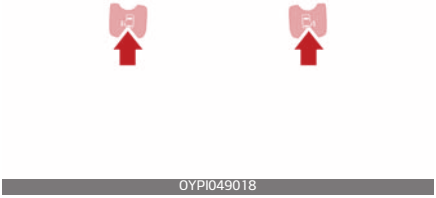
OYPI049017

On the tailgate



OYPI049027

On the centre pillar trim



OYPI049018

On the outside handle



OYPI049345

1. Left power sliding door control button
2. Right power sliding door control button
3. Power tailgate control button*
4. Power door ON/OFF button
5. Power sliding door control button on the outside handle*

* : if equipped

The power sliding doors and power tailgate can be opened and closed automatically with the folding key or smart key, the main control buttons on the overhead console or the sub control buttons on the centre pillar trim and the tailgate.

When the power door ON/OFF button is OFF (depressed), the power sliding door and power tailgate can be opened and closed manually by pulling the door handles from inside or outside vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

The tailgate swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the tailgate.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Unattended children/pets**

Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.

Children or animals might operate the power sliding door or power tailgate that could result in injury to themselves or others or damage to the vehicle.

**✻ NOTICE**

If the power sliding door is open approximately 6 hours, the ECU will enter Sleep mode to conserve battery power and the door might not close automatically. Close the door or tailgate manually and then operate the door with the power operating system.

**✻ NOTICE**

In cold and wet climates, power sliding doors and tailgate may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

**✻ NOTICE**

When the sliding doors are opened manually (power OFF), more effort will be required to open and close than on non-power sliding doors.

**✻ NOTICE**

- The power sliding door and power tailgate can be operated when the engine is not running. However the power operation consumes large amounts of vehicle electric power. To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not operate them excessively.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the power sliding door and power tail-

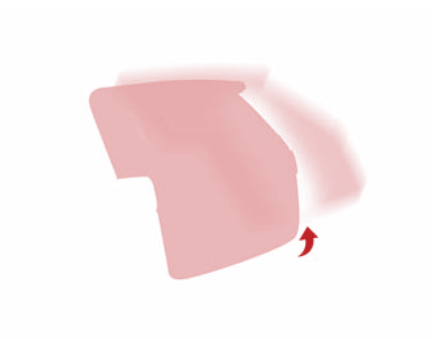
gate at open position for a long lime.

- Do not apply excessive force whilst operating the power sliding door or power tailgate. This could cause damage to the power sliding door or power tailgate.
- When jacking up the vehicle to change a tyre or repair the vehicle, do not operate the power sliding door or power tailgate. This could cause the power sliding door or power tailgate to operate improperly.
- It is recommended to wait until the power tailgate fully closed before starting the vehicle. The power tailgate may not close fully if the vehicle is started during automatic closing.

## Automatic stop and reversal



OYPI049041



OYPI049042

If the power opening or closing is blocked by an object or part of the body, the power sliding door and power tailgate will detect the resistance, then the chime will sound 3 times, and stop movement or move to the full open position to allow the object to be cleared.

However, if the resistance is weak such as an object that is thin or soft, or the door is near latched position, the automatic stop and reversal may not detect the resistance and closing operation will continue. Also, if the power sliding door or power tailgate is forced by strong impact, the automatic stop and reversal may operate.

If the automatic stop and reversal feature operates continuously more than twice during one opening or closing operation, the power sliding door or power tailgate may stop at that position. At this time, close the doors manually and operate the door automatically again.

## How to reset the power sliding door and power tailgate



OYPI049020

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the related fuse has been replaced or disconnected, and the power sliding door or power tailgate doesn't work properly, the power sliding door and power tailgate must be reset as follows:

### *For power sliding door*

1. Put the shift lever in the P (Park).
2. Close the fuel filler lid.
3. Change the position of fuse switch to OFF on the driver's side fuse panel and change the position of fuse switch to ON after 1 minute.
4. Close the sliding door manually.
5. Open the sliding door completely using the transmitter or main control button on the overhead console.
6. Close the sliding door completely using the transmitter or main control button on the overhead console.

For the left/right power sliding doors and power tailgate, follow above steps to reset.

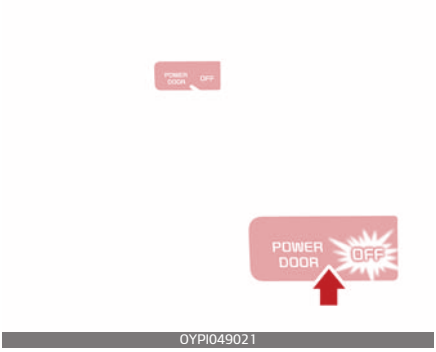
If the power sliding door or power tailgate doesn't work properly after the above procedure, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *For power tailgate*

1. Put the shift lever in P (Park).
2. Press the tailgate handle switch and tailgate close button at the same time for more than 3 seconds. (the chime will sound).
3. Close the tailgate manually.
4. Open the tailgate using the tailgate handle switch and allow it to fully open.
5. After fully opening, the tailgate will complete initialisation and hazard warning flasher lights will flash twice indicating reset complete.

If the power tailgate does not work properly after the above procedure, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Power door ON/OFF button




OYPI049021

- When the power door ON/OFF button is ON (not depressed), the power sliding door and power tailgate can be controlled with the sub control buttons on the centre pillar trim or tailgate. Also, the doors can be opened and closed automatically by pulling the inside or outside door handles.
- When the power door ON/OFF button is OFF (depressed), the power sliding door and power tailgate can not be controlled with the sub control buttons or door handles.
  Also, the doors can be opened and closed manually by pulling the inside or outside door handles.

**✻ NOTICE**

Do not allow children to play with the power sliding door or power tailgate. Keep the power door ON/OFF button in the OFF (depressed) position when not in use.

**✻ NOTICE**

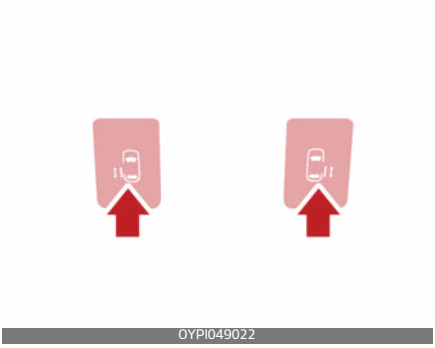
Close the sliding door and tailgate, and keep the power door ON/OFF button in the OFF (depressed) position before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash.

**✻ NOTICE**

When the sliding doors and power tailgate are opened manually (power OFF), more effort will be required to open and close than on non-power sliding doors and non-power tailgate.

### Power sliding door operation

- Push the corresponding main control button on the overhead console to open or close the power sliding door.



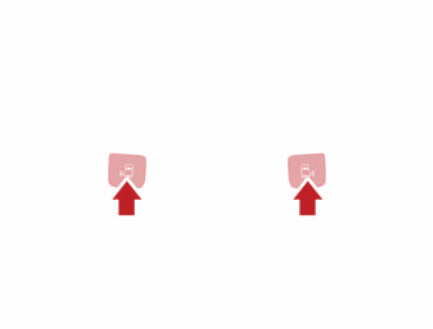
OYPI049022

However, you can operate the power sliding door by using the switch on the overhead console even when every sliding doors and tailgate are locked and closed.

This function will not operate when the sliding doors and tailgate are locked by key fobs and transmitter.

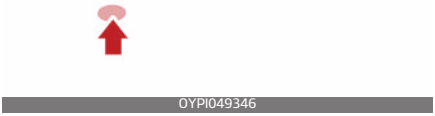
- When the power door ON/OFF button is ON (not depressed), do as follows to open or close the power sliding doors:

On the centre pillar trim



OYPI049023

On the outside handle



OYPI049346

- Push the corresponding sub control button on the centre pillar trim.
- Push the corresponding sub control button on the outside handle.
- Pull the door handle from inside or outside vehicle.
- If the sub control button is pushed whilst the door is locked or child safety lock is engaged, the chime sounds once, and the power sliding door will not open.
- If the door handle is pulled from inside or outside whilst the door is locked or child safety lock is engaged, the power sliding door will not open. However, the power sliding door can be opened by pulling the outside door handle or pushing the corresponding sub control button on the outside handle whilst the door is unlocked and child safety lock is engaged.

- When the power door ON/OFF button is OFF (depressed), the power sliding door can not be controlled with the sub control buttons or door handles, and if the sub control button is pushed, chime sounds once.
  However, the doors can be opened and closed manually by pulling the door handles from inside or outside vehicle.
- On a steep grade, the power sliding door will slide faster when closing. And the drive unit motor may operate additionally for a moment after the door is closed. This is a normal operation to ensure door closing, not a malfunction.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Rear door locks**

Use the rear door safety locks whenever children are in the vehicle. If a child accidently opens the rear doors whilst the vehicle is motion, he can fall out.

When the rear passenger operates the power sliding door, make sure there are no people or objects around the door, and have all occupants get in or out of the vehicle after the door is open fully and stopped. Let the rear passengers get in or out of the vehicle after the door is open fully. Sudden closing could cause a serious injury. Close the door by pulling the door handle after the door is open fully. Do not pull the door handle whilst rear passengers are getting in or out. The door could suddenly close by itself and cause a serious injury. It takes about 5 seconds for the power sliding door to close and latch completely.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Power sliding door**

Do not begin accelerate before the door closes and latches completely. If the door is not completely closed whilst the vehicle is moving, the door can open and passengers can fall out of the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Be careful that the rear sliding doors may open by unintentionally pressing the button.

- The left power sliding door cannot be opened whilst the fuel filler lid is open. If the main or sub control button is pushed, the chime sounds once. Also, if the fuel filler lid open button is pushed whilst the left power sliding door is opening, the chime sounds 3 times.

**✻ NOTICE**

If the fuel filler lid is opened when the left sliding door is not closed completely, the door may be opened. Close the left sliding door before refuelling to prevent possible damage to the door or the fuel filler lid.

- If the power sliding door is not closed and latched completely after power closing operation, the chime sounds 4 times. Open and close the door again.
- If the power sliding door is operated whilst the door is in partially opened position (less than 300

mm/12 in), the door is automatically opened fully.
- If the power sliding door is operated whilst the door is in half-opened position (more than 300 mm/12 in), the door is automatically closed completely.
- If the power sliding door is operated again whilst the door is closing, the door is automatically opened fully.
- If the power sliding door is operated again whilst the door is opening, the door is automatically closed completely. However, If the power sliding door is operated again when the door is in partially opened position (less than 300 mm/12 in), the is opened continuously.
- The half-opened power sliding door is automatically opened or closed fully by pushing the door forward or backward without pulling the door handle whilst the power door ON/OFF button is in ON (not depressed). However, when the door is in partially opened position (less than 300 mm/12 in), the door is not closed automatically.

### *Power sliding door non-opening conditions*

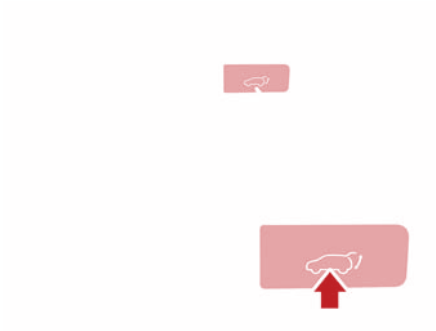
The power sliding door is not automatically opened, but closed under the following conditions. If the main or sub control button is pushed for power opening operation, the chime sounds once.

When the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ON position,

1. Vehicle is moving above 5 km/h (3 mph).
2. The gearshift lever is not in P (Park) for automatic transmission.

### Power tailgate operation (if equipped)

- Push the power tailgate main control button for approximately 1 second on the overhead console to open or close the power tailgate.



0YPI049026

However, you can operate the power sliding door by using the switch on the overhead console even when every sliding doors and

tailgate are locked and closed. This function will not operate when the sliding doors and tailgate are locked by key fobs and remote controls. But the power tailgate will be opened with the folding key (or smart key).

- When the power tailgate is operated with the main or sub control button or transmitter, the chime sounds and hazard warning lights flash 2 times.
- When the power door ON/OFF button is ON (not depressed), do as follows to open or close the power tailgate:



OYPI049446

  - Pushing the sub control button on the bottom of the tailgate will close the power tailgate automatically.
  - Pressing and pulling up the tailgate handle slightly will open the power tailgate automatically when the tailgate is unlocked.
- When the power door ON/OFF button is OFF (depressed), the power tailgate can not be controlled with the sub control buttons or tailgate handle. However, the tailgate may be opened manually by pulling the exterior handle and lifting the tailgate upward. The tailgate may be manually closed by pushing the tailgate downward.
- Do not drive the vehicle until the power tailgate completely closed. The power tailgate may not close completely if the vehicle is started during automatic closing.

## ✻ NOTICE

The button on the tailgate will not illuminated and operated when the power door On/OFF button is OFF (depressed).

## ✻ NOTICE

If the power tailgate does not operate normally, first check the following condition before using the power tailgate.

- Make sure the shift lever is in P (Park).
- Make sure the Power tailgate Off switch is not pressed.

If any of the power tailgate buttons are pressed whilst the power tailgate is in operation, the power tailgate will stop. If any button is pressed again the power tailgate will reverse direction.

- Even though the Power door ON/OFF button is in the OFF (depressed) position, if the tailgate is manually closed to the secondary latch position, the tailgate will be electrically moved to the fully latched position. Make sure that face, arms, hands, and other obstructions are safely out of the way before operating the tailgate.
- The chime will sound and the hazard warning flasher will blink 10 times if you drive with the tailgate closed but not fully secured. Stop your vehicle immediately at a safe place to check if your tailgate is securely locked.
- Make sure there are no people or objects around the tailgate before operating the power tailgate. Wait until the tailgate is open fully and stopped before loading or unloading cargo or passengers from the vehicle.
- Make sure the tailgate is closed firmly before driving. If the tailgate is open, you will draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause serious injury or death to vehicle occupants.
- If the power tailgate is not closed and latched completely after power closing operation, the chime will sound and hazard warning lights will blink 10 times. Stop the driving immediately and close the tailgate securely at the safe place.
- If the power tailgate is operated whilst the tailgate is in the partially opened position (more than 9degrees), the tailgate will stop the operation. If you operate the power tailgate again, the power tailgate will be operate in the opposite direction.
- If the power tailgate is operated whilst the tailgate is in the partially closed position (less than 9degrees), the tailgate will open fully.
- If the power tailgate is operated whilst the tailgate is in the partially opened position (less than 9degrees), the tailgate will stop at approximately 9degree open position.

**Power tailgate non-opening conditions**

The power tailgate will not open automatically, but will close under the following conditions.

When the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ON position,

1. Vehicle is moving above 3 km/h (2 mph).
2. The gear shift lever is not in P (Park) for automatic transmission.

The chime will sound continuously if you drive over 3 km/h (2 mph) with the tailgate opened. Stop your vehicle at a safe place as soon as possible to check if your tailgate is opened.

### Power tailgate opening height user setting



OYPI049446

The driver may set the height of a fully opened tailgate by following the below instruction.

1. Confirm the position of the power door ON/OFF button is ON (not depressed).
2. Position the tailgate manually or via automatic operation to the height you prefer.

**⚠ WARNING**

Make sure that there are no people or objects in the path of the power tailgate (or smart tailgate) prior to use. Serious injury, damage to the vehicle or damage to surrounding objects may result if contact with the power tailgate (or smart tailgate) occurs.

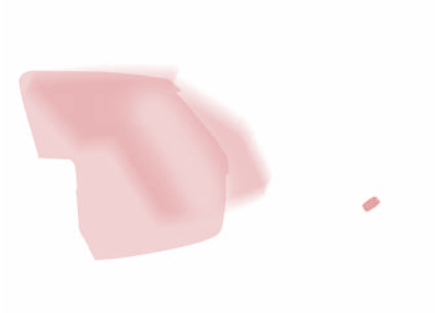



OYPI049247

3. Press the tailgate close button for more than 3 seconds.
4. You will hear the system beep twice indicating height has been set up.

The tailgate will open to the height the driver has set up.

### Smart tailgate (if equipped)



OYPI049028

On the vehicle equipped with a smart key, the tailgate can be opened with no-touch activation using the Smart tailgate system.

### *How to use the Smart Tailgate*

The tailgate can be opened with notouch activation satisfying all the conditions below.

- After 15 seconds when all doors are closed and locked.
- Positioned in the detecting area for more than 3 seconds.

## ✻ NOTICE

- The Smart Tailgate does not operate when:
  - The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and is continuously detected.
  - The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and 1.5 m from the front door handles. (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Light)
  - A door is not locked or closed.
  - The smart key is in the vehicle.

### *1. Setting*

To activate the Smart Tailgate, go to User Settings Mode and select Smart Tailgate on the LCD display.

* For more details, refer to "LCD display" on page 4-70.

### *2. Detect and Alert*



0YPI049029

If you are positioned in the detecting area (50 ~100 cm behind the vehicle) carrying a smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound for about 3 seconds to alert you the smart key has been detected and the tailgate will open.

## ✻ NOTICE

Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the tailgate to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, leave the detecting area with the smart key. The tailgate will stay closed.

### *3. Automatic opening*



OYPI049030

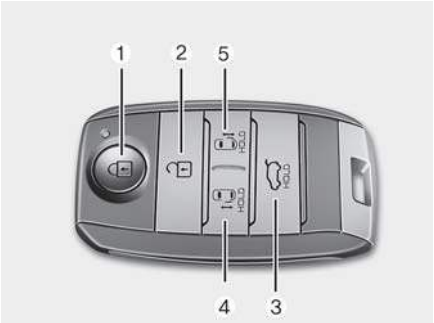
The hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound 2 times and then the tailgate will slowly open.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle.
- Make sure there are no people or objects around the tailgate before opening or closing the tailgate.
- Make sure objects in the rear cargo area do not come out when opening the tailgate onthe slope way. It may cause serious injury.
- Make sure to deactivate the Smart tailgate function when washing your vehicle.
  Otherwise, the tailgate may open inadvertently.
- The key should be kept out of reach of children. Children may inadvertently open the Smart Tailgate whilst playing around the rear area of the vehicle.

### *How to deactivate the Smart Tailgate function using the smart key*

Smart key




OYP044078L

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Tailgate open/close
4. Right side power sliding door open/close
5. Left side power sliding door open/close

If you press any button of the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the Smart Tailgate function will be deactivated.

Make sure to be aware of how to deactivate the Smart Tailgate function for emergency situations.

**✻ NOTICE**

- If you press the door unlock button (2), the Smart Tailgate function will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the

Smart Tailgate function will be activated again.
- If you press the tailgate open button (3) for more than 1 second, the tailgate opens.
- If you press the door lock button (1) or tailgate open button (3) when the Smart Tailgate function is not in the Detect and Alert stage, the Smart Tailgate function will not be deactivated.
- In case you have deactivated the Smart Tailgate function by pressing the smart key button and opened a door, the Smart Tailgate function can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.

### *Detecting area*




OYPI049031

- The Smart Tailgate operates with a welcome alert if the smart key is detected within 50 ~ 100 cm from the tailgate.
- The alert stops at once if the smart key is positioned outside the detecting area during the Detect and Alert stage.

## ✻ NOTICE

- The Smart Tailgate function will not work if any of the following occurs:
  - The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
  - The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
  - Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- The detecting range may decrease or increase when:
  - One side of the tyre is raised to replace a tyre or to inspect the vehicle.
  - The vehicle is slantingly parked on a slope or unpaved road, etc.

## Emergency tailgate safety release



OYPI049320

Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate. When someone is inadvertently locked in the cargo area, the tailgate can be opened by pushing the release lever and pushing open the tailgate.

**⚠ WARNING**

- For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release lever in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.
- No one should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.
- Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use with extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is in motion.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not grasp the part supporting the tailgate (gas lifter), as this may cause serious injury.



OYPI049452

## Windows

The doors of this vehicle are equipped with power windows that can be operated by a switch.



OYPI049032

1. Driver's door power window switch
2. Front passenger's door power window switch
3. Rear door (left) power window switch
4. Rear door (right) power window switch
5. Window opening and closing
6. Automatic power window up*/ down*
7. Power window lock switch*

*: if equipped

**✻ NOTICE**

In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate.

Each door has a power window switch that controls the door's window. The driver has a power window lock button which can block the operation of rear passenger windows. The power windows can be operated for approximately 10 minutes after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 10 minutes period.

The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls all the windows in the vehicle.

If the window cannot be closed because it is blocked by objects, remove the objects and close the window.

**✻ NOTICE**

Whilst driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open position), your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately one inch. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.

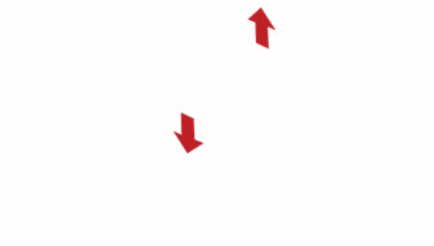
**⚠ WARNING**

Do not install any accessories in the area of windows. It may impact jam protection.

### Window opening and closing

You can open and close windows using the power window switch.

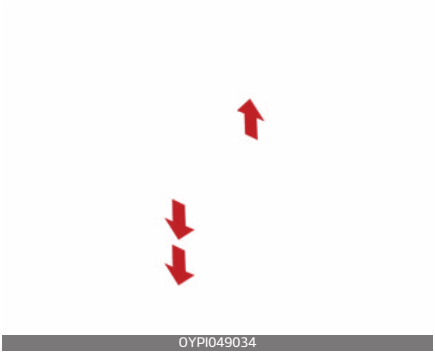
***Type A***



OYPI049035

To open or close a window, press down or pull up the front portion of the corresponding switch to the first detent position (5).

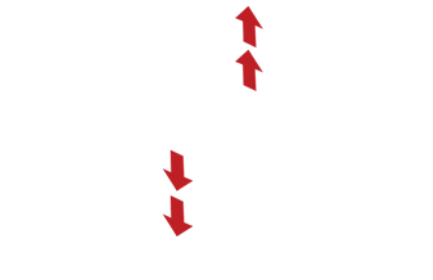
### *Type B – Auto down window (for driver's window) (if equipped)*



OYPI049034

Pressing the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up the switch momentarily to the opposite direction of the window movement.

### *Type B – Auto up/down window (if equipped)*



OYPI049033

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or raises the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

If the power window does not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Close the window and continue pulling up the power window switch for at least 1 second after the window is completely closed.

### *Automatic reversal (if equipped)*



OSP2I049096

If the upward movement of the window is blocked by an object or part of the body, the window will detect the resistance and will stop upward movement. The window will then lower approximately 30 cm

(11.8 in) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance whilst the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 in).

And if the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

**✻ NOTICE**

The automatic reverse feature for the window is only active when the "auto up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.

**⚠ WARNING**

Always check for obstructions before raising any window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage. If an object less than 4 mm (0.16 in) in diameter is caught between the window glass and the upper window channel, the automatic reverse window may not detect the resistance and will not stop and reverse direction.

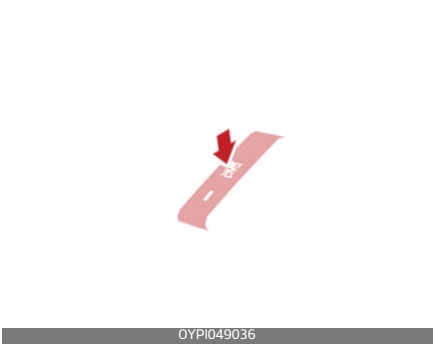
**⚠ WARNING**

The automatic reverse feature is not activated whilst resetting power window system.

Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

### *Power window and rear sunroof (if equipped) lock switch*

The driver can disable the power window switches on a rear passenger door and the rear sunroof switch on a rear passenger room lamp by depressing the power window and rear sunroof lock switch on the driver's door to LOCK (pressed).



OYPI049036

When the power window and rear sunroof lock switch is pressed:

- When the power window and rear sunroof lock switch is pressed:

- The driver's master control can operate all the power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passenger's control cannot operate the rear passenger's power window.
- The rear sunroof control cannot operate the rear sunroof. But The front master sunroof control can operate both front and rear sunroofs (if equipped).

**⚠ CAUTION**

- To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.
- Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Windows**

- NEVER leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.
- NEVER leave any child unattended in the vehicle. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or otherwise injure themselves or others.
- Always double check to make sure all arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.
- Do not allow children play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock button in the LOCK position (pressed). Serious injury can result from unintentional window operation by the child.
- Do not extend heads or any limbs outside the window outside the window whilst the vehicle is in motion.

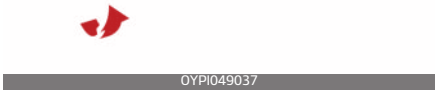
## Bonnet

The bonnet serves as a cover for the engine compartment.

Open the bonnet if maintenance works needs to be performed in the engine compartment or if you need to look at the compartment.

### Opening the bonnet

1. Pull the release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet should pop open slightly.

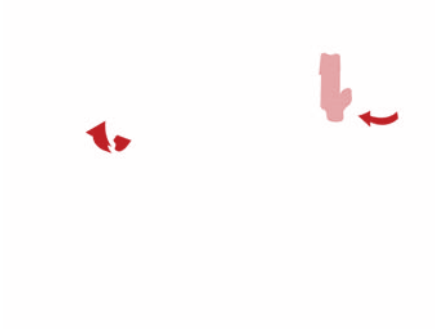


OYPI049037

**⚠ WARNING**

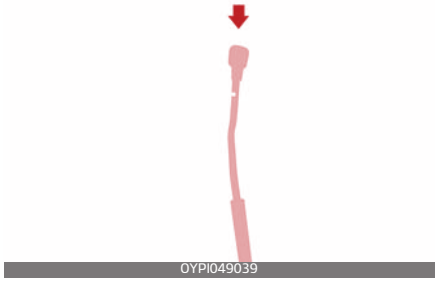
Open the bonnet after turning off the engine on a flat surface, shifting the shift lever to the P (Park) position for Automatic Transmission and setting the parking brake.

2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, push the secondary latch (1) up side and lift the bonnet (2).



OYPI049038

3. Pull out the support rod.

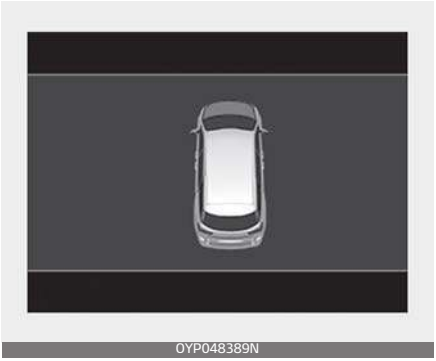


OYPI049039

4. Hold the bonnet opened with the support rod.

### Bonnet open warning

The bonnet warning message will appear on the LCD display when bonnet is open.



OYP048389N

The warning chime will operate when the vehicle is being driven at or above 3 km/h (2 mph) with the bonnet open.

### Closing the bonnet

1. Before closing the bonnet, check the following:
   - All filler caps in the engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Lower the bonnet until it is about 30 cm above the closed position and let it drop. Make sure that it locks into place.
3. Check that the bonnet has engaged properly.
   - If the bonnet can be raise slightly, it is not properly engaged.
   - Open it again and close it with a little more force.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Before closing the bonnet, ensure that all obstructions are removed from the bonnet opening. Closing the bonnet with an obstruction present in the bonnet opening may result in property damage or severe personal injury.
- Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Always double check to be sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the bonnet could open whilst the vehicle is being driven, causing total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.
- Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet raised. The view will be blocked and the bonnet could fall or be damaged.

## Fuel filler door

The vehicle's fuel filler door must be opened and closed by hand from outside the vehicle.

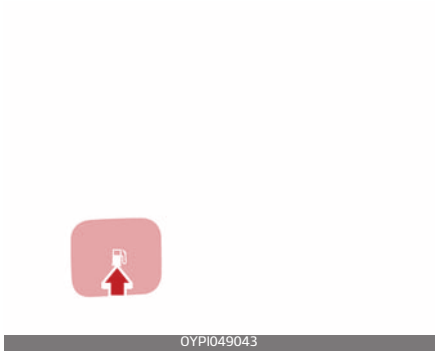
### Opening the fuel filler door

The fuel filler door must be opened from inside the vehicle by pulling up on the fuel filler door opener located on the front floor area on the driver's seat.

**NOTICE**

If the fuel filler door does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the door to break the ice and release the door. Do not pry on the door. If necessary, spray around the door with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

1. Stop the engine.
2. To open the fuel filler door, push the fuel filler door opener.



OYPI049043

3. Pull open the fuel filler door (1).



OYPI049474

4. To remove the cap (2), turn the fuel filler cap (2) counterclockwise.
5. Refuel as needed.

### Closing the fuel filler door

1. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it "clicks". This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.
2. Close the fuel filler door and push it lightly and make sure that it is securely closed.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Refuelling**

- If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and thus subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.
- Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.
- Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Refuelling dangers**

Automotive fuels are flammable materials. When refuelling, please note the following guidelines carefully. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in severe personal injury, severe burns or death by fire or explosion.

- Read and follow all warnings at the gas station facility.
- Before refuelling note the location of the Emergency Fuel Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station facility.
- Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching another metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source.
- Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refuelling since you can generate static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric (polyester, satin, nylon, etc.) capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapours resulting in rapid burning. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other fuel source.
- When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refuelling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling has begun, contact with the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete. Use only approved portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store fuel.
- Do not use cellular phones whilst refuelling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from cel-

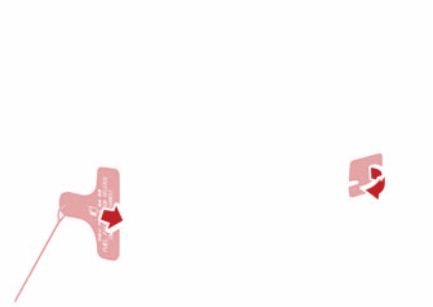
lular phones can potentially ignite fuel vapours causing a fire.
- When refuelling, always shut the engine off. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling is complete, check to make sure the filler cap and filler door are securely closed, before starting the engine.
- DO NOT use matches or a lighter and DO NOT SMOKE or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle whilst at a gas station especially during refuelling. Automotive fuel is highly flammable and can, when ignited, result in fire.
- If a fire breaks out during refuelling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" on page 1-2.
- If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, please make sure that you use parts designed for replacement in your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system. For more detailed information, we recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.
- After refuelling, make sure the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

4

### Emergency fuel filler lid release



OYPI049165

If the fuel filler door does not open, use the remote fuel filler door release. Then you can open it by pulling the handle outward slightly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not pull the handle excessively, otherwise the luggage compartment area trim or release handle may be damaged.

## Sunroof (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.

Front



OYPI049046

Rear



OYPI049047

The sunroof can be operated for approximately 10 minutes after the ENGINE START/STOP button is turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the sunroof cannot be opened even within the 10 minutes period.

### ✻ NOTICE

- In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
- After a vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Do not continue to move the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.
- Make sure the sunroof is closed fully when leaving your vehicle. If the sunroof is open, rain or snow may leak through the sunroof and wet the interior as well as cause theft.

### ✻ NOTICE

The sunroof cannot slide when it is in the tilt position nor can it be tilted whilst in an open or slide position.

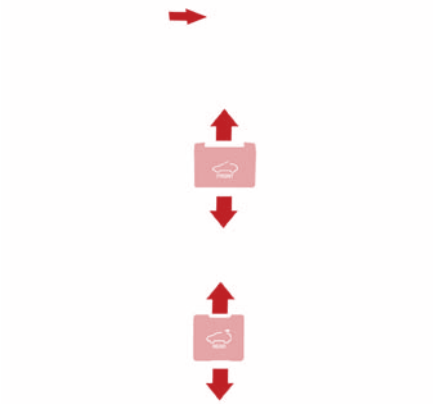
### ⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the sunroof or sunshade whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.

**⚠ WARNING**

- In order to prevent accidental operation of the sunroof, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the sunroof.
- Do not sit on the top of the vehicle. It may cause vehicle damage.

## Sliding the sunroof



OYPI049048

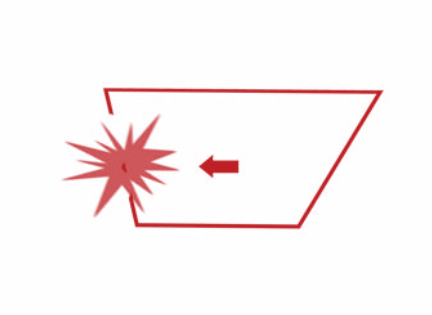
- To open the sunroof, pull the sunroof control lever backward.
- To close the sunroof, push the sunroof control lever forward.

### *To open the sunroof automatically*

- Pull the sunroof control lever backward to the second detent position and then release it.
  The sunroof will open as below:
  - Front sunroof: sunroof will slide all the way open.
  - Rear sunroof: sunroof will not open fully.

  To open the sun roof fully, pull the sunroof control lever again.
- To stop the sunroof sliding at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

### *Automatic reversal*



ODEEV068027NR

If an object or part of the body is detected whilst the sunroof is closing automatically, it will reverse the direction, and then stop.

The auto reverse function does not work if a tiny obstacle is between the sliding glass and the sunroof sash. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

**⚠ WARNING**

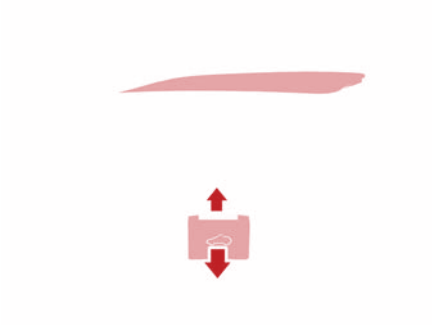
- Never try pinching any part of your body intentionally to activate the Automatic reversal function.
- The Automatic reversal function may not work if something gets caught just before the sunroof fully closes.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Roof cargo**

Do not operate the sun roof whilst using the roof rack to transport cargo. This may cause the cargo to come loose and distract the driver.

### Tilting the sunroof



OYPI049049

To open the sunroof, push the sunroof control lever upward until the sunroof moves to the desired position.

To close the sunroof, push the sunroof lever forward until the sunroof moves to the desired position.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Make sure heads, other body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the sunroof to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.
- Never adjust the sunroof or sunshade whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- To avoid serious injury or death, do not extend your head, arms or body outside the sunroof whilst driving.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.
- If you try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, the glass or the motor could be damaged.
- Whilst using sunroof for a long time, a dust between sunroof and roof panel can make a noise. Open the sunroof and remove regularly the dust using clean cloth.

- The sunroof is made to slide together with sunshade. Do not leave the sunshade closed whilst the sunroof is open.

### Sunshade

The sunshade will be opened with the glass panel automatically when the glass panel is slid.


OBDC049448RE

You will have to close it manually if you want it closed.

### Resetting the sunroof

Reset the sunroof when:

- Battery is discharged or disconnected or the related fuse has been replaced or disconnected.
- The one-touch sliding function of the sunroof does not normally operate.

Reset the sunroof as described below.

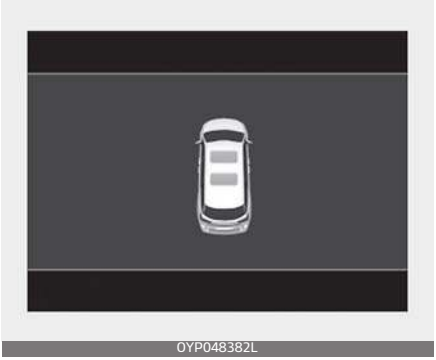
1. The ignition switch must be in the ON position.
2. Close the sunroof completely.
3. Release the control lever.
4. Push the control lever forward until the sunroof tilts and slightly moves up. Then, release lever.
5. Push the control lever forward until the sunroof is operated as follows:
   1) SLIDE OPEN → SLIDE CLOSE
   2) Then, release the control lever.

### Rear sunroof lock

When the power window lock switch is pressed, the rear sunroof control cannot operate the rear sunroof. But the front master sunroof control can operate both front and rear sunroofs. (if equipped)

### Sunroof open warning (if equipped)

If the driver removes the ignition key (smart key: turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for a few seconds and a warning image will appear on the LCD display.



OYP048382L

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

## Steering wheel

### Power steering

Power steering uses energy from the engine to assist you in steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Power steering pump**

Never hold the steering wheel to the extreme right or left for more than 5 seconds with the engine running. Holding the steering wheel for more than 5 seconds in either position may cause damage to the power steering pump.

**✻ NOTICE**

If the power steering drive belt breaks or if the power steering pump malfunctions, the steering effort will greatly increase.

## ✻ NOTICE

If the vehicle is parked for extended periods outside in cold weather (below -10°C/14°F), the power steering may require increased effort when the engine is first started. This is caused by increased fluid viscositydue to the cold weather and does not indicate a malfunction.

When this happens, increase the engine RPM by depressing the accelerator until the RPM reaches 1,500 rpm then release or let the engine idle for two or three minutes to warm up the fluid.

### Tilt & telescopic steering wheel

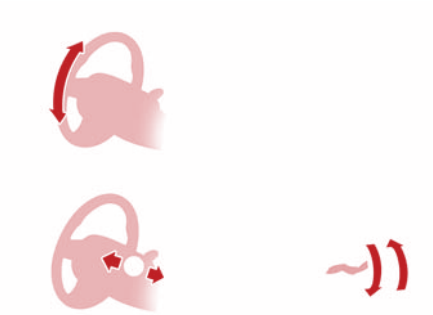
A tilt and telescopic steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle.

The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, whilst permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

## ⚠ WARNING

- Never adjust the angle of the steering wheel whilst driving. You may lose steering control and cause severe personal injury, death or accidents.
- After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.

### *Adjusting steering wheel angle and height*



OYPI049050

1. To change the steering wheel angle, pull down the lock release lever (1).
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3).
3. Pull up the lock-release lever (4) to lock the steering wheel in place.
4. Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.

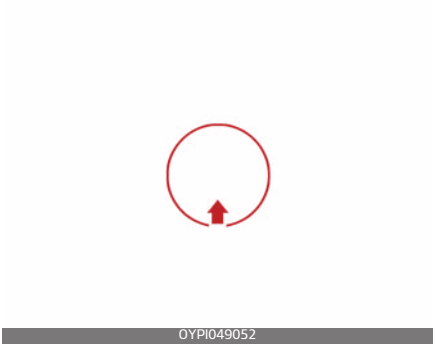
## ✻ NOTICE

After adjustment, sometimes the lock-release lever may not lock the steering wheel.

It is not a malfunction. This occurs when two gears engage. In this case, adjust the steering wheel again and then lock the steering wheel.

### Horn

To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration).



OYPI049052

The horn will operate only when this area is pressed. Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.
- When cleaning the steering wheel, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohole and gasoline (petrol). Doing so may damage the steering wheel.

## Mirrors

This vehicle is equipped with inside and outside rearview mirrors to provide views of objects behind the vehicle.

### Inside rearview mirror

Adjust the rearview mirror so that the centre view through the rear window is seen.

Make this adjustment before you start driving.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Rear visibility**

Do not place objects in the rear seat or cargo area which would interfere with your vision out the rear window.

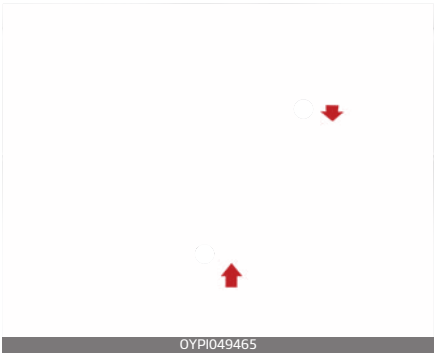
**⚠ WARNING**

Do not adjust the rearview mirror whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not modify the inside mirror and don't install a wide mirror. It could result in injury, during an accident or deployment of the air bag.

### *Day/night rearview mirror (if equipped)*



OYPI049465

(1): Day, (2): Night

Make this adjustment before you start driving and whilst the day/night lever is in the day position (1).

Pull the day/night lever toward you (2) to reduce the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you during night driving.

Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.

### *Electric Chromic Mirror (ECM) with MTS servic (if equipped)*

The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions.




OYPI049472

1. SOS Button
2. Roadside assist button
3. Virtual assist button (UVO)

The sensor (4) mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle, and automatically controls the headlight glare from the vehicles behind you.

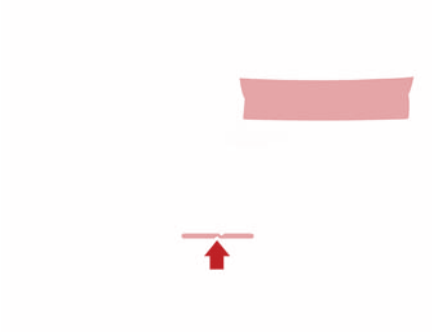
When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

Telematics buttons are also located on the mirror.

**⚠ CAUTION**

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. It may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

### *Conversation mirror*



OYPI049055

The mirror is a convenient feature to help the front passenger talk with rear passengers without turning the head or body rearward.

- To use the mirror, push the cover and open it.
- Close the cover after use.

### Outside rearview mirror

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors.

Be sure to adjust the mirror angles before driving.

The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the control levers or remote switch, depending on the type of mirror control installed. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing through a narrow street.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Rearview mirrors**

- The outside rearview mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.
- Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict the movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with warm water.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.

### *Adjusting the outside rearview mirrors*

The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors.



OYPI049057

Adjusting the rearview mirrors:

1. Move the R or L switch (1) to select the right side mirror or the left side mirror.
2. Press a corresponding point (▲) on the mirror adjustment control (2) to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.
- Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand. Doing so may damage the parts.

### *Reverse parking aid function (if equipped)*



OYPI049177

When you shift the shift lever to the R (Reverse) position, the outside rearview mirror(s) will move downward to aid reverse parking.

According to the position of the outside rearview mirror switch (1), the outside rearview mirror(s) will operate as follows:

**Left or Right**: When the remote control outside rearview mirror switch is in the left or right position, both outside rearview mirrors will move downward.

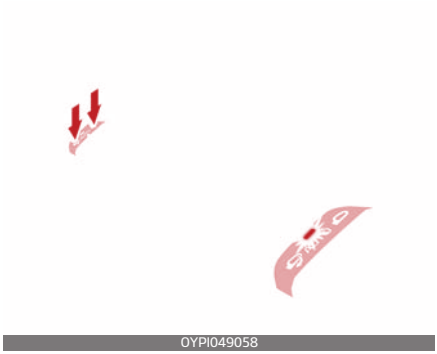
**Neutral**: When neither switch is selected, the outside rearview mirrors will not operate.

## ✻ NOTICE

The outside rearview mirrors will automatically revert to their original positions under the following conditions:

1. ENGINE START/STOP button is changed to the ACC or OFF position.
2. Shift lever is moved to any position except R.
3. Remote control outside rearview mirror switch is placed in the middle position.

### *Folding/Unfolding the outside rearview mirror*



OYPI049058

### *Electric type (if equipped)*

The outside rearview mirror can be folded or unfolded by pressing the switch as below.

**Right (1)**: The mirror will unfold.

**Left (2)**: The mirror will fold.

**Centre (AUTO)**: The mirror will fold or unfold automatically as follows:

- The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the folding key or smart key.
- The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the button on the outside door handle.
- The mirror will unfold when you approach the vehicle (all doors closed and locked) with a smart key in possession.

**⚠ CAUTION**

The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the ignition switch is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.

**⚠ CAUTION**

In case it is an electric type outside rearview mirror, don't fold it by hand. It could cause motor failure.



### Manual type (if equipped)



0YPI049269

To fold the outside rearview mirror:

- Grasp the housing of the mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.

## Instrument cluster




OYPI049101

* The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. LCD display
6. Warning and indicator lights

### Adjusting Instrument Cluster Illumination (if equipped)



OYPI049059

**⚠ WARNING**

Never adjust the instrument cluster whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and lead to an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.

The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is changed by pressing the illumination control button ("+" or "–") when the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button is ON, or the tail lights are turned on.

**⚠ WARNING**

Never adjust the instrument cluster whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and lead to an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.

- If you hold the illumination control button ("+" or "–"), the brightness will be changed continuously.




OSP2I049105

- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, an alarm will sound.

## Gauges

The gauges display various information such as the speed of the vehicle, and so on.

### *Speedometer*




OYPI049107

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in kilometers per hour (km/h).

### *Tachometer*




OYPI049103

The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

## ⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.

### *Engine coolant temperature gauge*




OYPI049471

This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button is ON.

## ⚠ CAUTION

If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the "H" position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to "If the engine overheats" on page 6-8.

## ⚠ WARNING

Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could severely burn. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.

### *Fuel gauge*




OYPI049470

This gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

## ✻ NOTICE

- The fuel tank capacity is given in "Recommended lubricants and capacities" on page 8-6.
- The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.
- On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may

come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Fuel Gauge**

Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.

You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the " E" level.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Avoid driving with a extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.

### *Odometer*

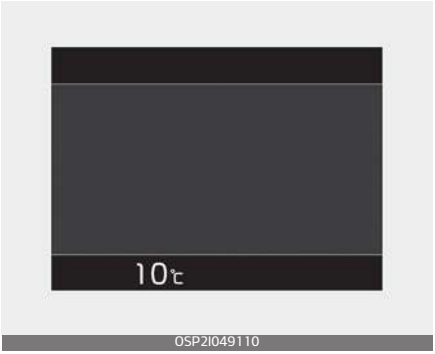



OSP2I049109

The odometer Indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

- Odometer range: 0 ~ 1,599,999 km or 999,999 miles.

### *Outside temperature gauge*




OSP2I049110

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1 °C (1 °F).

- Temperature range: -40 °C ~ 85 °C (-40 °F ~ 211 °F)

The outside temperature on the display may not change immediately like a general thermometer to prevent the driver from being inattentive.

To change the temperature unit (from °C to °F or from °F to °C)

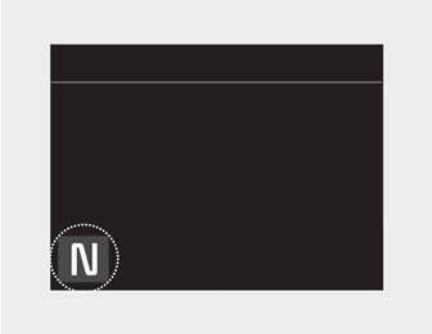
The temperature unit can be changed by using the "User Settings" mode of the LCD Display.

* For more details, refer to "LCD display" on page 4-70.

### Transmission shift indicator

Transmission shift indicator displays gear information depending on your vehicle's transmission type.

#### *Automatic transmission shift indicator (if equipped)*




OSK3048128NR

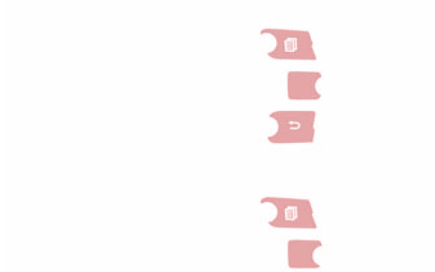
This indicator displays which automatic transmission shift lever is selected.

- Park: P
- Reverse: R
- Neutral: N
- Drive: D
- Sports Mode: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8

## LCD display

The LCD display modes can be changed by using the control buttons.

### LCD Display Control



0YPI049060

1. : MODE button for changing modes
2. ∧ /∨: /OK: SELECT scroll switch for setting the selected item and RESET scroll switch for resetting items
3. :RETURN button for move the previous mode or item

## LCD display modes

The LCD display provides 5 modes. You can switch modes by pressing the Mode button.

| | Mode | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Trip Computer | Turn By Turn (TBT)* | Information* | User Settings | Master warning |
| Up/Down | Fuel Economy | Route Guidance | TPMS | Door | The Master Warning mode displays warning messages related to the vehicle when one or more systems is not operating normally. |
| | Accumulated Info | Destination Info | | Lights | |
| | Drive Info | | | Sound | |
| | Digital speedometer | | | Convenience | |
| | | | | Service Interval | |
| | | | | Other | |
| | | | | Reset | |

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

* : if equipped

### *Trip computer mode*




OSP2I049111

The trip computer mode displays information related to vehicle driving parameters including fuel economy, tripmeter information and vehicle speed.

* For more details, refer to "Trip information (trip computer)" on page 4-77.

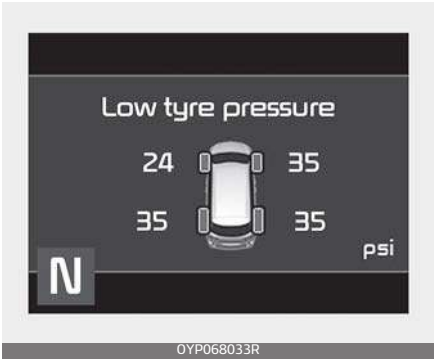
### *Turn By Turn (TBT) mode*




OSP2I049112

This mode displays the state of the navigation.

### *Information mode*




OYP068033R

This mode displays the state of:

- Tyre pressure

* For more details, refer to each system information in "Driving your vehicle" on page 5-3.

#### Tyre pressure status

* For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (if equipped)" on page 6-10.

### *Master warning mode*

This warning light informs the driver the following situations.

- LED headlamp malfunction (if equipped)
- Low engine oil

At this time, a Master Warning icon (⚠) will appear beside the User Settings icon (⚙), on the LCD display. If the warning situation is solved, the master warning light will

be turned off and the Master Warning icon will disappear.

### *User settings mode*




OYPI049469

In this mode, you can change the settings of the instrument cluster, doors, lamps, etc.

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

### Shift to P to edit settings/Engage parking brake to edit settings




OSK3048140NR

This warning message appears if you try to adjust the User Settings whilst driving.
For your safety, change the User Settings after parking the vehicle, applying the parking brake and moving the shift lever to P (Park).
For your safety, change the User Settings after engaging the parking brake.

## 1. Door

| Items | Explanation |
|---|---|
| Automatically Lock | • Off: The auto door unlock operation will be cancelled.<br>• Enable on speed: All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h (9.3 mph)<br>• Enable on shift: All doors will be automatically locked if the vehicle is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) position. |
| Automatically Unlock | • Off: The auto door unlock operation will be cancelled.<br>• Vehicle Off/On key out (if equipped): All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from the ignition switch or the ENGINE START/STOP button is set to the OFF position.<br>• On shift to P: All doors will be automatically unlocked if the gear is shifted to the P (Park) position. |
| Smart Tailgate | If this item is checked, the smart tailgate function will be activated. If the power tailgate function is not activated, you cannot activate this function. |

* The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

## 2. Lights

| Items | Explanation |
|---|---|
| One Touch Turn Indicator | • Off: The one touch turn signal function will be deactivated.<br>• 3, 5, 7 flashes: The turn signal indicator will blink 3, 5, or 7 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly.<br>* For more details, refer to "Lighting" on page 4-105. |
| Head Lamp Delay | If this item is checked, the head lamp delay function will be activated. |

* The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

### 3. Sound

| Items | Explanation |
|---|---|
| Parking Distance Warning Volume (if equipped) | Adjust the Park Assist System volume. (Level 1 ~ 3) |

* The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

### 4. Convenience

| Items | Explanation |
|---|---|
| Welcome Mirror/Light (if equipped) | If this item is checked, the welcome Mirror/Light function will be activated. |
| Wireless Charging System (if equipped) | If this item is checked, the wireless charging function will be activated. |
| Wiper/Lights Display (if equipped) | If this item is checked, the Wiper/Lights Display will be activated. |
| Auto Rear Wiper (in R, if equipped) | If this item is checked, the rear wiper will automatically activated when the front wiper is in ON position and shift lever is in R (reverse) position. |
| Gear Position Pop-up (if equipped) | If this item is checked, the gear position pop-up display will be activated. |

* The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

### 5. Service interval

| Items | Explanation |
|---|---|
| Enable Service Interval | If this item is checked, the Service Interval function will be activated. |
| Adjust Interval | If the service interval menu is activated, you may adjust the time and distance. |
| Reset | To reset the service interval function. |

If the service interval is activated and the time and distance is adjusted, messages are displayed in the following situations each time the vehicle is turned on.

- Service in: Displayed to inform the driver the remaining mileage and days to service.
- Service required: Displayed when the mileage and days to service has been reached or passed.

If any of the following conditions occur, the mileage and number of days to service may be incorrect.

- The battery cable is disconnected.
- The battery is discharged.

## 6. Other

| Items | Explanation |
|---|---|
| Fuel Economy Reset | • Off: The average fuel economy will not reset.<br>• After ignition / After refuelling: The average fuel economy will reset automatically after ignition/refuelling. |
| Fuel Economy Unit | • Km/L, L/100Km<br>To select the Fuel economy unit.<br>For more details, refer to "Trip information (trip computer)" on page 4-77. |
| Temperature Unit | • °C/°F<br>To select the Temperature unit. |
| Tyre Pressure Unit | • psi, kPa, bar<br>To select the Tyre Pressure Unit |

* The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

## 7. Reset

| Items | Explanation |
|---|---|
| Reset | You can reset the menus in the User Settings mode. All menus in the User Settings mode are reset to factory settings, except language and service interval. |

## LCD displays

LCD displays show the following information to drivers.

- Trip information
- LCD modes
- Warning messages

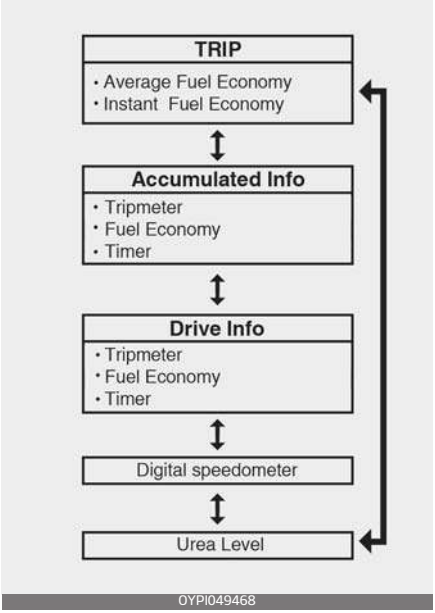
### Trip information (trip computer)

The trip computer is a microcomputer- controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

**NOTICE**

Some driving information stored in the trip computer resets if the battery is disconnected.

### *Trip Modes*




To change the trip mode, scroll the toggle the switch (∧ / ∨) on the steering wheel.

### *Fuel economy*

#### Average Fuel Economy (1)



OSP2I049115

- The average fuel economy is calculated by the total driving distance and fuel consumption since the last average fuel economy reset.
  - Fuel economy range: 0~99.9 km/L, L/100 km or mpg
- The average fuel economy can be reset both manually and automatically.

#### Manual reset

To clear the average fuel economy manually, press the OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

#### Automatic reset

To make the average fuel economy be reset automatically whenever refuelling, select the "Fuel economy auto reset" mode in User Setting menu of the LCD Windows (Refer to "User settings mode" on page 4-73).

- OFF - You may set to default manually by using the trip switch reset button.
- After ignition - The vehicle will automatically set to default once 4 hours pass after the Ignition is in OFF.
- After refuelling - After refuelling more than 6 litres and driving over 1 km/h, the vehicle will reset to default automatically.

**NOTICE**

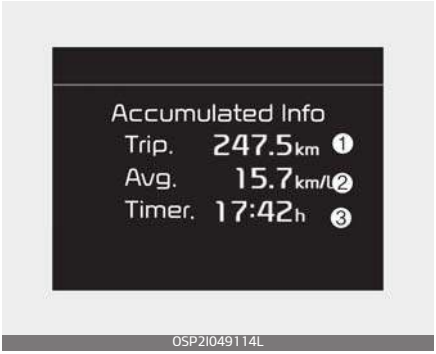
The average fuel economy is not displayed for more accurate calculation if the vehicle does not drive more than 10 seconds or 50 metres (0.03 miles) since the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button is turned to ON.

#### Instant Fuel Economy (2)

- This mode displays the instant fuel economy during the last few seconds when the vehicle speed is more than 10 km/h (6.2 mph).
  - Fuel economy range: 0.0~30 km/L, L/100 km or 0.0 ~ 50.0 mpg

### *Accumulated driving information mode*

This display shows the accumulated trip distance (1), the average fuel efficiency (2), and the total driving time (3).

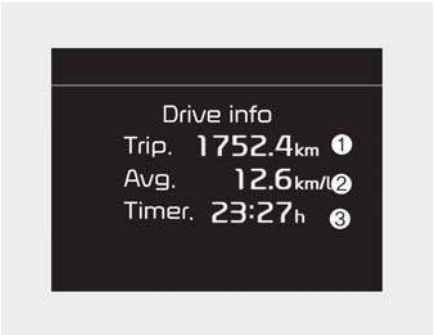



OSP2I049114L

- Accumulated information is calculated after the vehicle has run for more than 300 metres.
- If you press "OK" button for more than 1 second after the Cumulative Information is displayed, the information will be reset.
- If the engine is running, even when the vehicle is not in motion, the information will be accumulated.

### *Drive Info display*

This display shows the trip distance (1), the average fuel efficiency (2), and the total driving time (3) information once per one ignition cycle.




OSP2I049116L

- Fuel efficiency is calculated after the vehicle has run for more than 300 metres.
- The Driving Information will be reset 4 hours after ignition has been turned off. So, when the vehicle ignition is turned on within 4 hours, the information will not be reset.
- If you press "OK" button for more than 1 second after the Driving Information is displayed, the information will be reset.
- If the engine is running, even when the vehicle is not in motion, the information will be accumulated.

### *Digital speedometer*

This digital speedometer display shows the speed of the vehicle.




OSK3048331CR

### *Urea level gauge*




OCD048116R

This mode displays the amount of the remaining urea solution in the urea solution tank.

### Service mode

This mode reminds you of scheduled maintenance information.

### *Service in*

It calculates and displays when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days).




OYP048394C

If the remaining mileage or time reaches 1,500 km (900 miles) or 30 days, "Service in" message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP Button to the ON position.

### *Service required*

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the already inputted service interval, "Service required" message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP Button to the ON position.

To reset the service interval to the mileage and days you inputted before:

- Press the OK button (Reset) for more than 1 second.

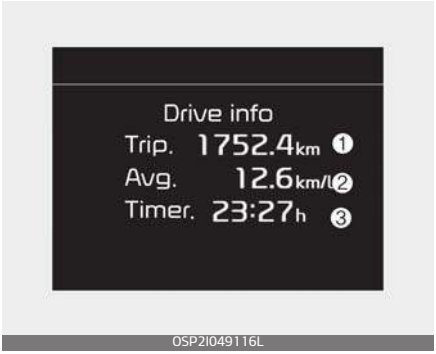
## NOTICE

If any of the following conditions occurs, the mileage and days may be incorrect.

- The battery cable is disconnected.
- The battery is discharged.

### Driving info display

At the end of each driving cycle, the Driving Info message is displayed.




OSP2I049116L

This display shows the trip distance (1), average fuel economy (2), driving time (3).

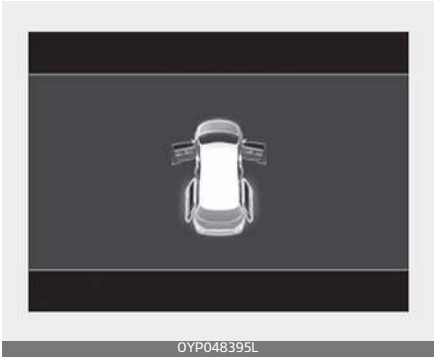
This information is displayed for a few seconds when you turn off the vehicle, and then goes off automatically. The information is calculated for each time the vehicle is turned on.

## NOTICE

- If sunroof open warning is displayed in the cluster, the Driving Information message may not be displayed.
- To set the charging time and/or climate time, refer to a separately supplied car navigation system manual for detailed information.

### LCD display messages

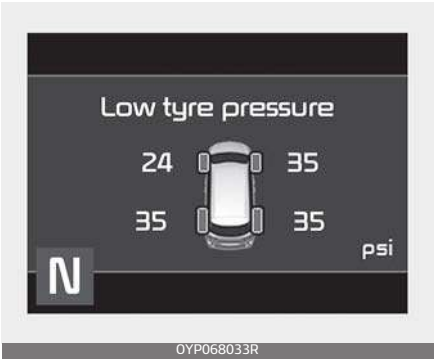
#### *Door, bonnet, tailgate, sunroof open*



OYP048395L

- This warning is displayed indicating which door, the bonnet, the tailgate or the sunroof is open.

### *Low Pressure warning display*




OYP068033R

This warning message is displayed if the tyre pressure is low. The corresponding tyre on the vehicle will be illuminated.

* For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (if equipped)" on page 6-10.

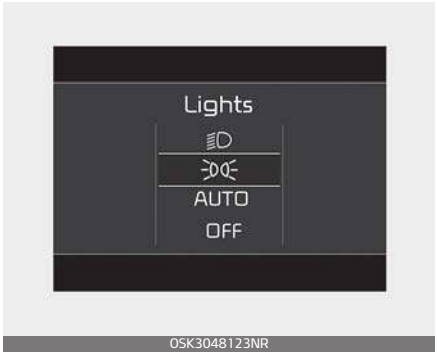
### *Sunroof open (if equipped)*



OSP2I049104

- This warning is displayed if you turn off the engine when the sunroof is open.

### *Lights mode*

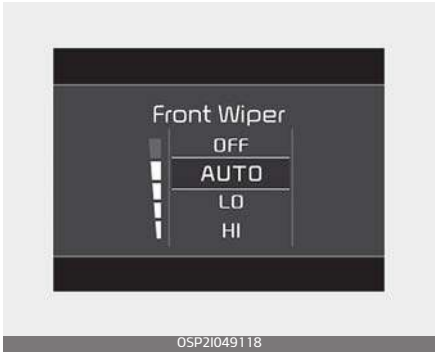



OSK3048123NR

This indicator displays which exterior light is selected using the lighting control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights Display function from the User Settings mode in the cluster LCD display.

### *Wiper mode*




OSP2I049118

This indicator displays which wiper speed is selected using the wiper control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights Display function from

the User Settings mode in the cluster LCD display.

***Engine has overheated***

- This warning message illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is above 120 °C (248 °F). This mean that the engine is overheated and may be damaged.

* If your vehicle is overheated, refer to "If the engine overheats" on page 6-8.

***Low key battery (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the battery of the smart key is discharged when the ENGINE START/STOP Button changes to the OFF position.

***Press START button whilst turning wheel (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the ENGINE START/STOP Button is pressed.
- It means that you should press the ENGINE START/STOP Button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left.

***Steering wheel unlocked (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock when the ENGINE START/STOP Button changes to the OFF position.

***Check steering wheel lock system (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock normally when the ENGINE START/STOP Button changes to the OFF position.

***Key not in vehicle (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you press the ENGINE START/STOP Button.
- It means that you should always have the smart key with you.

***Key not detected (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not detected when you press the ENGINE START/STOP Button.

***Shift to P or N to start engine (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.

***Press brake pedal to start engine (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if the ENGINE START/STOP Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.
- It means that you should depress the brake pedal to start the engine.

***Battery discharging due to external electrical devices (if equipped)***

The vehicle can detect self-discharge of the battery due to over-current that is generated by unauthorised electrical devices such as black box mounting during parking.

Please note that functions such as ISG are limited and battery discharge problems may occur.

If the warning continues even after external electrical devices are removed, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

***Press start button again (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if you can not operate the ENGINE START/STOP Button when there is a problem with the ENGINE START/STOP Button system.
- It means that you could start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/ Stop Button once more.
- If the warning illuminates each time you press the ENGINE START/STOP Button, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

***Press start button with key (for smart key system)***

- This warning message illuminates if you press the ENGINE START/STOP Button whilst the warning message "Key not detected" is illuminating.
- At this time, the immobiliser indicator light blinks.

### *Check headlight*

- This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction (burnedout bulb except LED lamp or circuit malfunction) with the headlamp. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**✻ NOTICE**

When replacing the bulb, use the same wattage bulb.

* For more information, refer to "Bulb wattage" on page 8-4.

### *Check exhaust system*

This warning message illuminates if the DPF system has a malfunction. at this time, DPF warning light also blinks. In this case, have the DPF system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

* For more details, refer to "Warning lights" on page 4-85.

## Warning and indicator lights

The warning light and indicator light indicate a situation where the driver should be careful and whether the various functions are activated.

### Warning lights

The warning light indicates situations that require the driver to pay attention.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Warning lights**

Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the engine. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

### *Air bag warning light*

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 6 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the SRS.
  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Seat belt warning light*

**This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.**

* For more details, refer to "Seat belts" on page 3-38.

### *Parking brake & brake fluid warning light*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds
  - It remains on if the parking brake is applied.
- When the parking brake is applied.
- When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in reservoir is low.

**If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:**

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required (For more details, refer to "Brake fluid" on page 7-17). Then check all brake components for fluid leaks. If any leak on the brake system is still found, the warning light remains on, or the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle.
   In this case, have the vehicle towed to a professional workshop and inspected. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**Dual-diagonal braking system**

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.
With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the vehicle. Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working.
If the brakes fail whilst you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light**

Driving the vehicle with a warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light* EPB *(if equipped)*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPB.
  In this case, you should have the vehicle inspected by an authorized Kia dealer.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light**

The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly (This does not indicate malfunction of the EPB).

### *Anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light* (ABS)

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ABS (The normal braking system will still be operational without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system).
  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light* (ABS) (!)

**These two warning lights illuminate at the same time whilst driving:**

- When the ABS and regular brake system may not work normally.
  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional work-

shop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light**

When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.

In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.

Have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**✻ NOTICE**

**Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light**

When the ABS Warning Light is on or both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or tripmeter may not work.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Charging System Warning Light*



**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
- When there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system.

**If there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system:**

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the alternator drive belt for looseness or breakage.
   In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)*



**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Diesel Engine**

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) blinks, some error related to the injection quantity adjustment occurs which could result in loss of engine power, combustion noise and poor emission.

In this case, have the engine control system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Engine oil pressure warning light*



**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When the engine oil pressure is low.

If the engine oil pressure is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the engine oil level (For more details, refer to "Engine oil" on page 7-19). If the level is low, add oil as required.
   If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light**

- If the engine does not stop immediately after the Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light is illuminated, severe damage could result.
- If the warning light stays on whilst the engine is running, it indicates that there may be serious engine damage or malfunction. In this case,
  1. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  2. Turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level.
  3. Start the engine again. If the warning light stays on after the engine is started, turn the engine off immediately. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Fuel Filter Warning Light (Diesel Engine)* 

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When water has accumulated inside the fuel filter. In this case, remove the water from the fuel filter.

* For more details, refer to "Fuel filter" on page 7-27

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Fuel Filter Warning Light**

- When the Fuel Filter Warning Light illuminates, engine power (vehicle speed & idle speed) may decrease.
- If you keep driving with the warning light on, engine parts (injector, common rail, high pressure fuel pump) may be damaged. If this occurs, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.

### *Low Fuel Level Warning Light* 

**This warning light illuminates:**

When the fuel tank is nearly empty.

**If the fuel tank is nearly empty:**

Add fuel as soon as possible.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Low Fuel Level**

Driving with the Low Fuel Level warning light on or with the fuel level below "E" can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter. (if equipped)

### *Low Tyre Pressure Warning Light*  *(if equipped)*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more of your tyres are significantly under inflated. (The location of the underinflated tyres are displayed on the LCD display).

* For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (if equipped)" on page 6-10.

**This warning light remains on after blinking for approximately 60 seconds or repeats blinking on and off at the intervals of approximately 3 seconds:**

- When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.
  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

* For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (if equipped)" on page 6-10.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Low tyre pressure**

- Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.
- Continued driving or low pressure tyres will cause the tyres to overheat and fail.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Safe Stopping**

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors.
- If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

### *Master warning light* ⚠

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- This warning light informs the driver the following situations
  - LED headlamp malfunction (if equipped)
  - Lamp malfunction

To identify the details of the warning look at the LCD display.
If the warning situation is solved, the master warning light will turn off.

### *Exhaust system (DPF) warning light (for diesel engine) (if equipped)*

This warning light illuminates:

- When there is a malfunction with Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system.
- When this warning light illuminates, it may turn off after driving the vehicle:
  - at more than 60 km/h (37 mph), or
  - at more than 2nd gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

If this warning light blinks in spite of the procedure (at this time the LCD warning message will be displayed),

have the DPF system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If you continue to drive with the DPF warning light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can worsen.

### *SCR warning light*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- When the urea solution tank is nearly empty.

**If the urea solution tank is nearly empty:**

- Refill urea solution as soon as possible.

* For more details, refer to "Selective Catalytic Reduction (if equipped)" on page 7-88.

### *LED headlamp warning light (if equipped)*

**This warning light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the LED headlamp.
  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**This warning light blinks:**

- When there is a malfunction with a LED headlamp related part.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Indicator lights

### *Electronic stability control (ESC) indicator light (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.
  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**This indicator light blinks:**

Whilst the ESC is operating.

* For more details, refer to "Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) (if equipped)" on page 5-23.

### *Electronic stability control (ESC) OFF indicator light (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- Once you set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

* For more details, refer to "Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) (if equipped)" on page 5-23.

### *Immobiliser Indicator Light (Without Smart Key) (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the vehicle detects the immobiliser in your key properly whilst the ignition switch is ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

**This indicator light blinks:**

- When there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.
  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Immobiliser Indicator Light (With Smart Key) (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:**

- When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle properly whilst the ENGINE START/STOP Button is ACC or ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

**This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:**

- When the smart key is not in the vehicle.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine.

**This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:**

- When the vehicle can not detect the smart key which is in the vehicle whilst the ENGINE START/STOP Button is ON.
  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**This indicator light blinks:**

- When the battery of the smart key is weak.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine. However, you can start the engine if you press the ENGINE START/STOP Button with the smart key. (For more details, refer to "Immobiliser system" on page 4-8).
- When there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.
  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Turn signal indicator light*

**This indicator light blinks:**

- When you turn the turn signal light on.

If any of the following occurs, there may a malfunction with the turn signal system. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- The indicator light does not blink but illuminates.
- The indicator light blinks more rapidly.
- The indicator light does not illuminate at all.

### *High beam indicator light*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the headlights are on and in the high beam position.
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

### *Light ON indicator light*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the tail lights or headlights are on.

### *Front fog indicator light (if equipped)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the front fog lights are on.

### *Glow Indicator Light (for diesel engine)*

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the engine is being pre-heated with the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP Button in the ON position.
  - The engine can be started after the glow indicator light goes off.
  - The illumination time varies with the engine coolant temperature, air temperature, and battery condition.

If the indicator light remains on or blinks after the engine has warmed up or whilst driving, there may a malfunction with the engine pre-heating system.
In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## ✻ NOTICE

**Engine Preheating**

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, set the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP Button to the LOCK or OFF position for 10 seconds and then to the ON position in order to preheat the engine again.

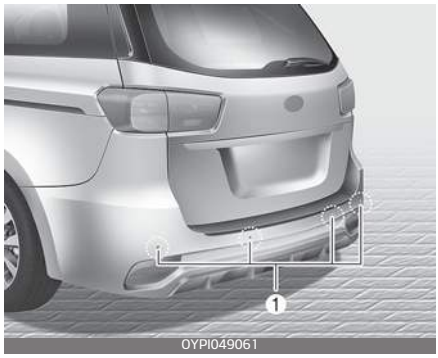
### *Cruise indicator light* CRUISE

**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When the cruise control system is enabled.

* For more details, refer to "Cruise control system" on page 5-37.

## Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) (if equipped)




Reverse Parking Distance Warning system assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within a distance of 120 cm (48 in.) behind the vehicle.

This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the back sensors (1) are limited. Whenever backing-up, pay as much attention to what is behind you as you would in a vehicle without Reverse Parking Distance Warning system.

## ⚠ WARNING

Reverse Parking Distance Warning system is a supplementary function only. The operation of Reverse Parking Distance Warning system can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the area behind the vehicle before and whilst backing up.

### Operation of Reverse Parking Distance Warning system

***Operating condition***

- This system will activate when backing up with the ignition switch ON.
  If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 5 km/h (3 mph), the system may not be activated correctly.
- The sensing distance whilst Reverse Parking Distance Warning system is in operation is approximately 120 cm (48 in).
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognised first.

| Types of warning sound | Indicator* |
|---|---|
| When an object is 60 cm to 120 cm (24 in to 48 in) from the rear bumper:<br>Buzzer beeps intermittently. |  |
| When an object is 30 cm to 60 cm (12 in to 24 in) from the rear bumper:<br>Buzzer beeps more frequently. |  |
| When an object is within 30 cm (12 in.) of the rear bumper:<br>Buzzer sounds continuously. |  |

* if equipped

## ✻ NOTICE

The indicator may differ from the illustration as objects or sensors status.

If the indicator blinks, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Non-operational conditions of Reverse Parking Distance Warning system

***Reverse Parking Distance Warning system may not operate properly when:***

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when the moisture has been cleared.)
2. The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will

operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Driving on uneven road surfaces (unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, gradient).
4. Objects generating excessive noise (vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes) are within range of the sensor.
5. Heavy rain or water spray exists.
6. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are within range of the sensor.
7. The sensor is covered with snow.
8. Trailer towing

***The detecting range may decrease when:***

1. The sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (The sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
2. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.

***The following objects may not be recognised by the sensor:***

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects which tend to absorb the sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
3. Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m (40 in) in height and narrower than 14 cm (6 in) in diameter.

**Reverse Parking Distance Warning system precautions**

- This system may not sound consistently depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
- This system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- The sensor may not recognise objects less than 30 cm (11 in) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
- Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

**✻ NOTICE**

This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors; It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.

Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.

Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.

**⚠ WARNING**

Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.

### Self-diagnosis

If you don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting the gear to the R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction in Reverse Parking Distance Warning system. If this occurs, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

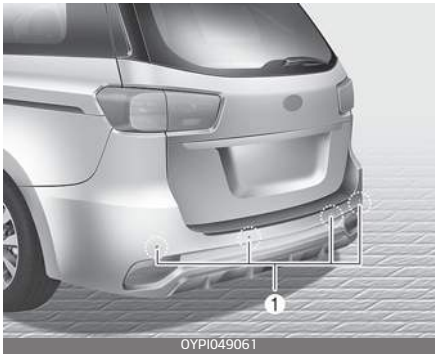
Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants due to Reverse Parking Distance Warning system malfunction. Always drive safely and cautiously.

## Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) (if equipped)

Front




Rear




Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning assists the driver during movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within the distance of 100 cm (39 in) in front or behind the vehicle.

This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver.

The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors (1) are limited. Whenever moving pay as much attention to what is in front and behind of you as you would in a vehicle without Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning system.

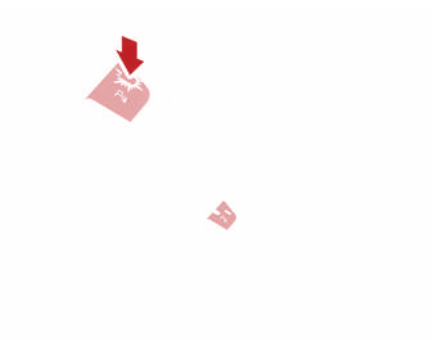
### ⚠ WARNING

**Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning**

Never rely solely on Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction. Stop immediately if you are aware of a child anywhere near your vehicle. Some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's size or material.

## Operation of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning system

### *Operating condition*



OYPI049481

- This system activates when Parking Distance Warning button is pressed with the ENGINE START/STOP button or the ignition switch.
- The indicator of Parking Distance Warning button turns on automatically and activates Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning system when you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position.
- The sensing distance whilst backing up is approximately 100 cm (40 in) when you are driving less than 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The sensing distance whilst moving forward is approximately 100 cm (40 in) when you are driving less than 10 km/h (5 mph).
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognised first.
- The side sensors are activated when you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position.
- If the vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, the system automatically turns off. To activate again, push the button.

**✻ NOTICE**

It may not operate if it's distance from the object is already less than approximately 25 cm when the system is ON.

## Type of warning indicator and sound

| Distance from object | | Warning indicator | | Warning sound |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | When driving forward | When driving rearward | |
| 60 cm ~ 100 cm (24 in ~ 40 in) | Front |  | - | Buzzer beeps intemittently |
| 60 cm ~ 120 cm (24 in ~ 48 in) | Rear | - |  | Buzzer beeps intermittently |
| 30 cm ~ 60 cm (12 in ~ 24 in) | Front |  |  | Buzzer beeps frequently |
| | Rear | - | | Buzzer beeps frequently |
| 30cm (12 in.) | Front |  |  | Buzzer sounds continuously |
| | Rear | - | | Buzzer sounds continuously |

### NOTICE

- The actual warning sound and indicator may differ from the illustration according to objects or sensor status.
- Do not wash the vehicle's sensor with high pressure water.

### CAUTION

- This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors;
  It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors. Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.
- Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.

### Non-operational conditions of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning

***Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may not operate normally when:***

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when moisture melts.)
2. Sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (Sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
4. Parking Distance Warning button is off.

***There is a possibility of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction when:***

1. Driving on uneven road surfaces such as unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, or gradient.
2. Objects generating excessive noise such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes can interfere with the sensor.
3. Heavy rain or water spray.
4. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones present near the sensor.
5. Sensor is covered with snow.

***Detecting range may decrease when:***

Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.

***The following objects may not be recognised by the sensor:***

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
3. Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m and narrower than 14 cm in diameter.

**✻ NOTICE**

1. The warning may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
2. Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified. Any nonfactory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
3. Sensor may not recognise objects less than 30 cm from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use with caution.
4. When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow or water, the sensor may be inoperative until

the stains are removed using a soft cloth.

5. Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor with any hard objects that could damage the surface of the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

### ✻ NOTICE

This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors, it can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, or objects located between sensors may not be detected.

Always visually check in front and behind the vehicle when driving. Be sure to inform any drivers in the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the systems capabilities and limitations.

### ⚠ WARNING

Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.

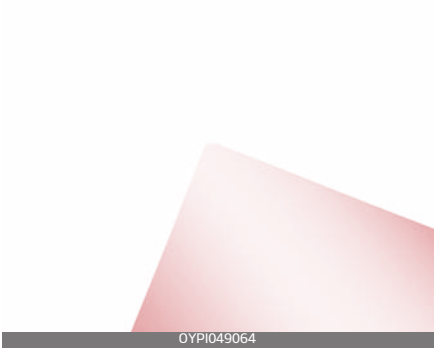
#### Self-diagnosis

If you don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting the shift lever into the R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction in Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning system. If this occurs, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

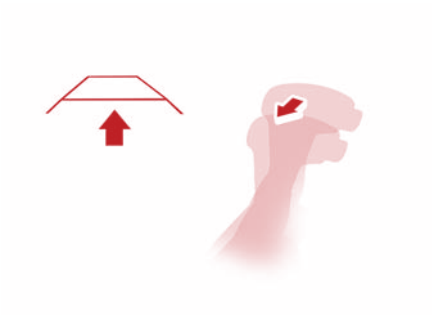
### ⚠ WARNING

Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants related to Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning system. Always drive safely and cautiously.

## Rear View Monitor (RVM) (if equipped)



OYPI049064



OYPI059293

Rear View Monitor will activate when the back-up light is ON with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R (Reverse) position.

This system is a supplemental system that shows behind the vehicle through the rearview display mirror whilst backing-up.

### ⚠ WARNING

- This system is a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the inside/outside rearview mirror and the area behind the vehicle before and whilst backing up because there is a dead zone that can't be seen by the camera.
- Always keep the camera lens clean. If lens is covered with foreign matter, the camera may not operate normally.

* If your vehicle is equipped with infotainment system, rearview display will show behind the vehicle through the infotainment system screen whilst backing-up. Refer to a separately supplied manual for detailed information.

## Lighting

This vehicle is equipped with a variety of lights to illuminate the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the headlight and interior light on for a prolonged time whilst the engine is not running.

### Battery saver function

The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged if the lights are left in the ON position. The system automatically shuts off the position lamp 30 seconds after the vehicle is turned off and the driver's door is opened and closed.

With this feature, the position lamp will turn off automatically if the driver parks on the side of the road at night and opens the driver's side door.

If necessary, to keep the position lamp on when the vehicle is turned off, perform the following:

1. Open the driver-side door.
2. Turn the position lamp OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

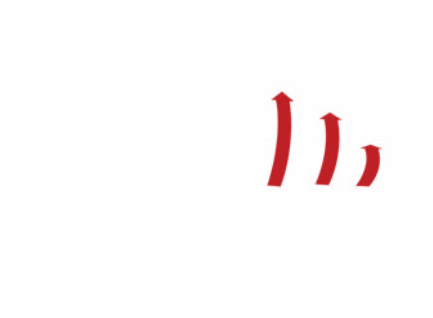
### Headlight escort function

If you turn the ignition switch to the ACC or OFF position with the headlights ON, the headlights remain on for about 5 minutes. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the transmitter (or smart key) twice or turning the light switch to the OFF position.

### Lighting control

The light switch has a headlight and a position lamp position.



OSP2I049048

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

1. OFF position
2. Auto light position
3. Position & Tail lamp
4. Headlight position

### *Position & Tail lamp*



OSP2I049049

When the light switch is in the position lamp position, the front position lamp and auxiliary lamp (if equipped), tail, license light will turn ON.

**NOTICE**

Auxiliary lamp will be ON only in position lamp condition.

### *Head light (Low Beam)*



OSP2I049050

When the light switch is in the head light position, head light (low beam), tail, license light will turn ON.

**NOTICE**

The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the head-lights.

### *Auto light (if equipped)*



OSP2I049051

When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and headlights will turn ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Never place anything over the sensor (1) located on the instrument panel as this will ensure better auto-light system control.
- Don't clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.
- If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windscreen, the Auto light system may not work properly.

### Operating high beam



OSP2I049052

To turn on the high beam headlamp:

- Push the lever away from you. The lever will return to its original position.

The high beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.

To flash the headlights:

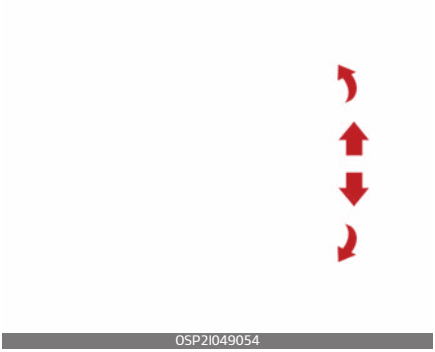
- Pull the lever towards you.



OSP2I049053

It will return to the normal (low beam) position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.

## Operating turn signals and lane change signals



OSP2I049054

The ENGINE START/STOP button must be on for the turn signals to function.

To turn on the turn signals:

- Move the lever up or down (A). The green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating. They will self-cancel after a turn is completed. If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.

To signal a lane change:

- Move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

## Operating front fog light

Fog lights are designed to provide improved visibility when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow, etc.



OSP2I049055

The fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch (1) is turned to the on position after the headlight is turned on.

To turn off the fog lights:

- Turn the fog light switch (1) to the ON position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor.

### *Headlight levelling device*



OYPI049467

To adjust the headlight beam level according to the number of the passengers and loading weight in the luggage area, turn the beam levelling switch.

The higher the number of the switch position, the lower the headlight beam level. Always keep the headlight beam at the proper levelling position, or headlights may dazzle other road users.

Listed below are the examples of proper switch settings. For loading conditions other than those listed below, adjust the switch position so that the beam level may be the nearest as the condition obtained according to the list.

| Loading condition | Switch position |
|---|---|
| Driver only | 0 |
| Driver + Front passenger | 0 |
| Full passengers (including driver) | 1 |
| Full passengers (including driver) + Maximum permissible loading | 2 |
| Driver + Maximum permissible loading | 3 |

## Wipers and washers

The wipers and washers remove foreign substances from the windscreen and rear window, helping to maintain visibility.

Front windscreen wiper/washer



OYPI049459

Rear windscreen wiper/washer



OYPI049455

**A: Wiper speed control (front)**

- MIST – Single wipe
- OFF – Off
- INT – Intermittent wipe
- LO – Low wiper speed
- HI – High wiper speed

**B: Intermittent control wipe time adjustment**

**C: Wash with brief wipes (front)**

**D: Rear wiper/washer control**

- HI – Continuous wipe
- LO – Intermittent wipe
- OFF – Off

**E: Wash with brief wipes (rear)**

### ✻ NOTICE

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windscreen wipers to ensure proper operation. If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.

**Operating windscreen washers**



OYPI049456

1. Move the wiper speed control switch to In OFF position.
2. Pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen and to run the wipers

1–3 cycles. Use this function when the windscreen is dirty. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windscreen washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the motor compartment on the passenger side.

**⚠ CAUTION**

To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windscreen with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on the windscreen and obscure your vision.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windscreen, do not operate the wipers when the windscreen is dry.
- To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline (petrol), kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.
- To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.
- To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.

4

### Operating rear window wiper and washer switch

The rear window wiper and washer switch is located at the end of the wiper and washer switch lever.

- Turn the switch to the desired position to operate the rear wiper and washer.



OYPI049457

- HI – Normal wiper operation
- LO – Intermittent wiper operation
- OFF – Wiper is not in operation

- Push the lever away from you to spray rear washer fluid and to run the rear wipers 1~3 cycles.



OYPI049458

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

## Interior lights

This vehicle is equipped with lights throughout the vehicle to illuminate the interior.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is not running.

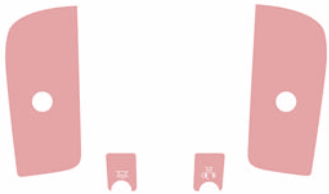
It may cause battery discharge.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. Accidents could happen because the view may be obscured by interior lights.

### Map lamp

Type A



OYPI049066

Type B




- Press the lens (1) to turn ON the map lamp.
  To turn the map lamp OFF press the lens (1) again.
- (2): DOOR mode
  - The map lamp and room lamp come on when a door is opened. The lamps go out after approximately 30 seconds.
  - The map lamp and room lamp come on for approximately 30 seconds when doors are unlocked with a transmitter or smart key as long as the doors are not opened.
  - The map lamp and room lamp will stay on for approximately 20 minutes if a door is opened with the ENGINE START/STOP button in the ACC or OFF position.
  - The map lamp and room lamp will stay on continuously if the door is opened with the ENGINE START/STOP button or the ignition switch in the ON position.
  - The map lamp and room lamp will go out immediately if the ENGINE START/STOP button or the ignition switch is changed to the ON position or all doors are locked.
  - To turn off the DOOR mode, press the DOOR button (2) once again (not pressed).
- (3): Press this switch to turn the front and rear room lamps on and off.

## NOTICE

The DOOR mode and ROOM mode can not be selected at a time.

### Room lamp

Type A

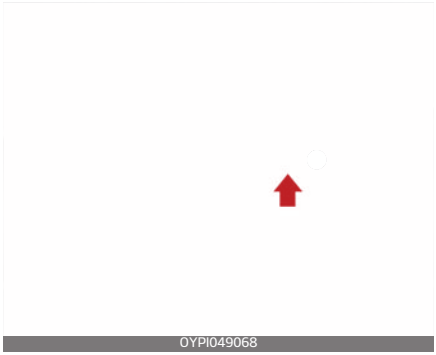


Type B




OYPI079162

Type C (if equipped)



OYPI049068

- Press the button(1) or lens(1) to turn the light on or off.

If the front map lamp turns on by the front map lamp switch, the room lamp will turn on.

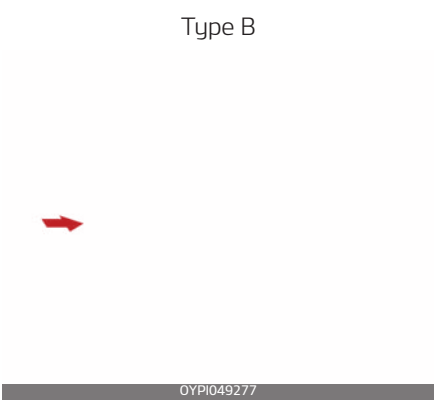
## Luggage room lamp

Type A



OYPI049069

Type B



OYPI049277

: The light comes on when the tailgate is opened.

: The light stays off at all times.

: The light stays on at all times.

**⚠ CAUTION**

The luggage room lamp comes on as long as the tailgate opens. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the tailgate securely after using the luggage room.

### Glove box lamp



OYPI049329

The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

The parking lights must be ON for the glove box lamp to function.

### Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)



OYPI049454

Slide the mirror cover to turn the light on or off.

**NOTICE**

Turn off the lamp before return the sun visor to its original position.

## Welcome system (if equipped)

The welcome system is a function that illuminates the surroundings or the interior when the driver approaches or exits the vehicle.

### Headlight (headlamp) escort function

The headlights (and/or taillights) remain on for approximately 5 minutes after the vehicle is turned off. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the smart key twice or turning off the light switch from the headlight or Auto light position.

### Pocket lamp

When all doors are locked and closed, the pocket lamp will come on for 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
  - When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.

At this time, if you press the door lock button, the lamps will turn off immediately.

### Interior light

When the interior light switch is in the DOOR position and all doors (and tailgate) are locked and closed, the room lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the following occurs:

- With the smart key system
  - When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
  - When the button of the outside door handle is pressed.

At this time, if you press the door lock button, the lamps will turn off immediately.

## Defroster

The vehicle is equipped with a defroster for removing frost or fog from the rear window.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Conductors**

To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.

If you want to defrost and defog the front windscreen, refer to "Windscreen defrosting and defogging" on page 4-134.

### Operating rear window defroster

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the rear window, whilst the engine is on.

If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.



0YPI049201

To activate the rear window defroster:

- Press the rear window defroster button located in the heater control panel.
  The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.
  The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ENGINE START/STOP button is turned off.

To turn off the defroster:

- Press the rear window defroster button again.

## Climate control system

The climate control system uses cooling and heating to help maintain a pleasant environment inside the vehicle.

### System operation

#### *Ventilation*

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

#### *Heating*

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.
   - If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

### Operation tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just at the base of the windscreen. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent fog from forming on the inside of the windscreen:
  - Set the air intake control to the fresh air position and the fan speed to the desired position.
  - Turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

### *Air conditioning (A/C)*

All Kia air conditioning systems are filled with R-134a refrigerant.

1. Start the vehicle. Press the A/C button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside-air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Excessive Air conditioning Use**

When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely whilst driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause vehicle overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates vehicle overheating.

**⚠ CAUTION**

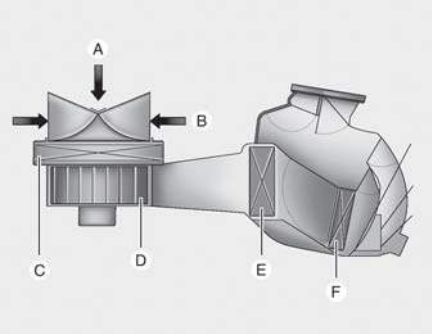
The air conditioning system should only be used with the windows and sunroof closed to prevent condensation inside the vehicle that may cause damage to electrical components.

### Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in vehicle speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal characteristic of system operation.
- To ensure maximum system performance, the air conditioning system should be ran for a few minutes each month.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal characteristic of system operation.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling; however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal characteristic of system operation.

### Climate control air filter

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system.



ODEEV068230NR

A: Outside air

B: Recirculated air

C: Climate control air filter

D: Blower

E: Evaporator core

F: Heater core

If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease. This leads to moisture accumulating on the inside of the windscreen even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, have the climate control air filter replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## NOTICE

- Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent air conditioner filter inspections and changes are required.
- When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Air conditioning refrigerant label

Example



OSP2069029

* The actual air conditioning refrigerant label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Each symbol and specification on the air conditioning refrigerant label is represented below:

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of Compressor lubricant
4. Caution
5. Service manual

You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of the engine compartment.

Refer to "Refrigerant label" on page 9-13 for more detail on the location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**AC Repair**

It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used, otherwise, damage to the vehicle may occur. To prevent damage, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified Kia technicians.

### Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a negative impact on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorized Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

The oil and refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is under very high pressure. If proper service procedures are not followed an explosion may result. To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified Kia technicians.

**⚠ WARNING**

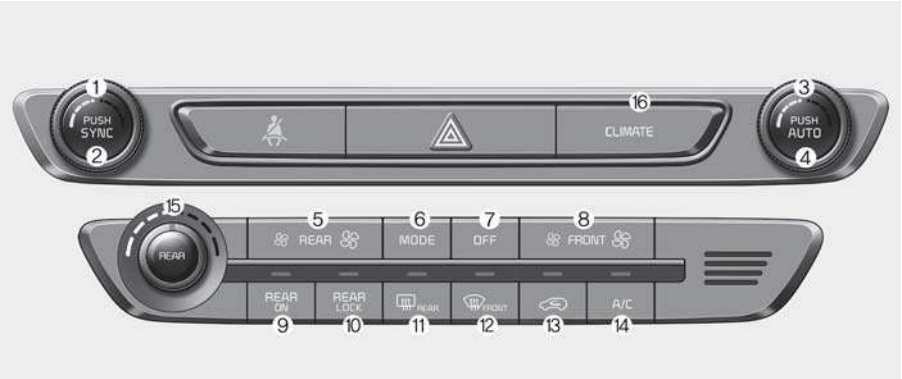
**Vehicles equipped with R-134a***

Because the refrigerant is at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

## Automatic climate control system

The automatic climate control system uses cooling and heating to help maintain a pleasant environment inside the vehicle.




OYPI049221

1. Passenger's temperature control knob
2. SYNC temperature control selection button
3. Driver's temperature control knob
4. AUTO (automatic control) button
5. Rear fan speed control button
6. Front mode selection button
7. Front blower off button
8. Front fan speed control button
9. Rear control on button
10. Rear control lock button
11. Rear window defroster button
12. Front windscreen defroster button
13. Air intake control button
14. A/C on button
15. Rear temperature control knob
16. Climate information screen selection button

### ✻ NOTICE

Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the engine is running.

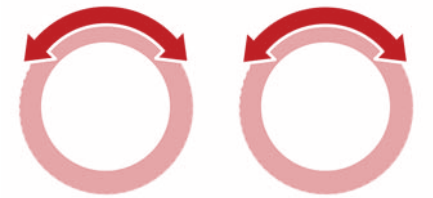
### Heating and air conditioning automatically

1. Press the AUTO button.
   The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically by setting the temperature.




OYPI049222

2. Turn the temperature control switch to the desired temperature.



OYPI049226

## NOTICE

- To turn the automatic operation off, select any button or switch of the following:
  - Mode selection button
  - Air conditioning button
  - Front windscreen defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windscreen defroster function. The AUTO sign will illuminate on the information display once again.)
  - Fan speed control knob

  The selected function will be controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.
- For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22 °C (72 °F).

## NOTICE

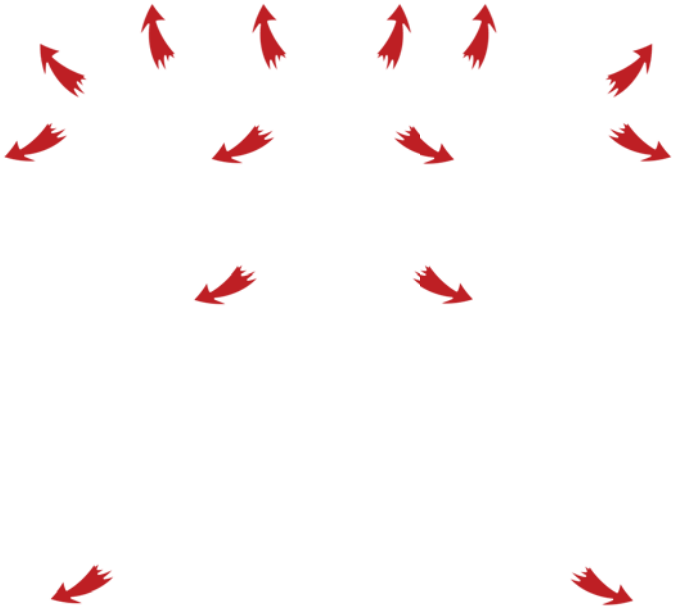
Never place anything over the sensor located on the instrument panel to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.



OYPI049223

## Heating and air conditioning manually

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pressing buttons other than the AUTO button.



OYPI049245

In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons selected.

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;
   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
   If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the AUTO button in order to convert to fully automatic control of the system.

### *Mode selection*

The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.




OYPI049224

The air flow outlet ports are switched in the following sequence:



**Face-Level (B, D)**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

**Bi-Level (B, C, D, E)**

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

**Floor-Level (A, C, D, E)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the wind-screen, side window defrosters and side air vents.

**Floor/Defrost-Level (A, C, D, E)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windscreen with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters and side air vents.

### *Defrost-Level (A, D)*




OYPI049225

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters and side air vents.

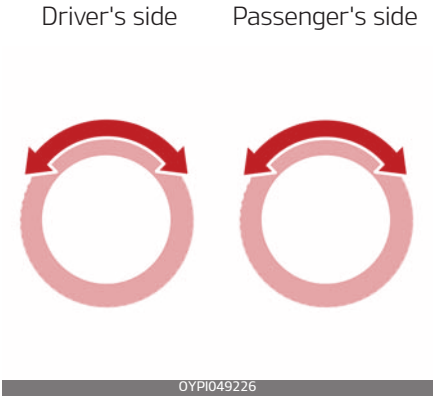
### *Instrument panel vents*



OYPI049206

You can adjust the direction of air delivered from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

### *Temperature control*




OYPI049226

The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by rotating the knob clockwise direction.

The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by rotating the knob anti clock wise direction.

When rotating the knob, the temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5 °C. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally**

- Press the "SYNC" button to adjust the driver and passenger side temperature equally.
  The passenger side temperature will be set to the same temperature as the driver side temperature.
- Turn the driver side temperature control knob. The driver and passenger side temperature will be adjusted equally.

**Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature individually**

- Press the "SYNC" button again to adjust the driver and passenger side temperature individually. The illumination of button turns off.
- Operate the driver side temperature control knob to adjust the driver side temperature.
- Operate the passenger side temperature control knob to adjust the passenger side temperature.

**Changing temperature scale**

You can switch the temperature mode from Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows:

- Whilst pressing the OFF button, press the AUTO button for 3 seconds or more.

The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade. If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Centigrade.

### *Controlling air intake*

This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.



OYPI049228

To change the air intake control position:

- Push the desired control button.

#### Recirculated air position

With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

#### Outside (fresh) air position



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

### ✻ NOTICE

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

### *Sunroof inside air recirculation (if equipped)*

If the sunroof opens whilst the heater or Air Conditioning system operates, the outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically for ventilating the car. Then, if you select the recirculated air position, the outside (fresh) air will be selected automatically after 3 minutes.

If you close the sunroof, the intake mode will be changed to the previous selected mode.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.
- Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.
- Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.

### *Controlling fan speed*

The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by operating the fan speed control button.

To change the fan speed:

- Press button right (✤) for higher speed, or press button left (✤) for lower speed.




0YPI049229

To turn the fan speed control off:

- Press the OFF button.

### *Air conditioning (A/C)*




0YPI049230

- Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

- Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

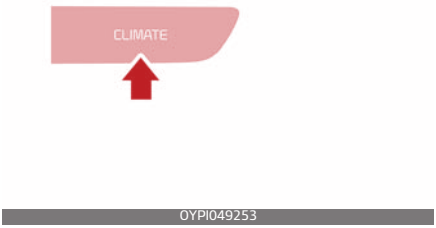
### *Turning off the front air climate control*




OYPI049231

- Press the OFF button to turn off the air climate control system. However, you can still operate the mode and air intake buttons as long as the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ON position.

### *Climate information screen selection*




OYPI049253

Press the climate information screen selection button to display climate information on the screen.

## Rear climate control




OYPI049234

1. Rear temperature control button
2. Rear AUTO button
3. Rear mode selection button
4. Rear air conditioning OFF button
5. Rear fan speed control button

To turn on the rear climate control system;

### *From the front seat*

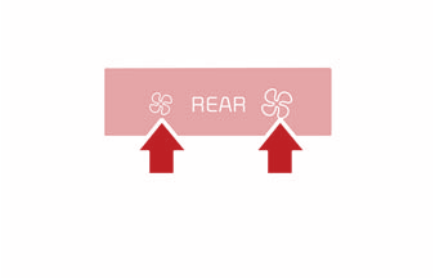
1. Set the rear climate control selection (REAR ON) button in the front climate control panel to the ON position.
2. Set the rear fan speed control knob in the front climate control panel to the desired position.
3. Set the rear temperature control knob in the front climate control panel to the desired position.

### *From the rear seat*

1. Set the rear climate control selection (REAR ON) button in the front climate control panel to the ON position.
2. Set the rear climate control selection (REAR LOCK) button in the front climate control panel to the OFF position.
3. Set the rear fan speed control button on the rear climate control panel to the desired position.
4. Set the rear temperature control button on the rear climate control panel to the desired position.
5. Select the desired rear mode button on the rear climate control panel. (if equipped)
6. To turn off the rear air conditioning system, press the off button in the rear climate control panel.

### *Rear fan speed control*

#### *From front seat*

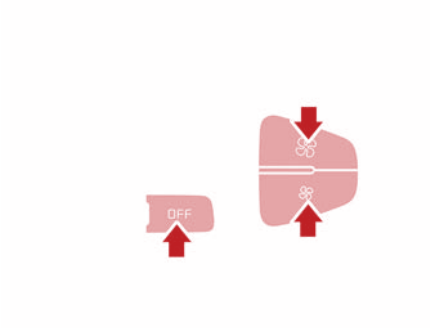



OYPI049235

Set the rear climate control selection (REAR ON) button to the ON position and turn the rear fan speed control (REAR) knob in the front climate control panel to the desired position.

- To change the rear fan speed, press the button (+) for higher speed, or press the button (-) for lower speed.
- To turn the fan speed control off, press the REAR ON button.

#### *From rear seat (if equipped)*




OYPI049236

Set the rear climate control selection (REAR ON) button in the front climate control panel to the ON position and set the rear climate control selection (REAR LOCK) button in the front climate control panel to the OFF position and press the rear fan speed control button on the rear control panel to the desired position.

- To change the rear fan speed, press the button (+) for higher speed, or press the button (-) for lower speed.
- To turn the fan speed control off, press the REAR ON button.

### *Rear temperature control*

#### *From front seat*



OYPI049248

Set the rear climate control selection (REAR ON) button to the ON position and turn the rear temperature control (REAR TEMP) knob in the front climate control panel to the desired position.

- To change the rear air temperature, turn the knob to the right position for warm and hot air or left position for cooler air.

#### *From rear seat*



OYPI049237

Set the rear climate control selection (REAR ON) button in the front climate control panel to the ON position and set the rear climate control selection (REAR LOCK) button in the front climate control panel to the OFF position.

- To change the rear air temperature, press the button (∧) for warmer air or press the button (∨) for cooler air.

### *Rear mode selection (if equipped)*



OYPI049217

- Front climate control is MAX A/C:
  Rear air blows from the upper vents on the rear ceiling.
- Front climate control is:
  Rear air blows from the upper vents on the rear ceiling and the lower vents on the right rear trim together.

- Front climate control is , : Rear air blows from the lower vents on the right rear trim.




OYPI049239

When the rear climate control selection (REAR ON) button in the front climate control panel is in the ON position and set the rear climate control selection (REAR LOCK) button in the front climate control panel to the OFF position and the rear mode is selected by pushing the rear mode selection button on the rear control panel as follows:

- : Rear air blows from the upper vents on the rear ceiling.
- : Rear air blows from the upper vents on the rear ceiling and the lower vents on the right rear trim together.
- : Rear air blows from the lower vents on the right rear trim.

***Rear vents***



OYPI049166

The vent can be adjusted by rotating the blade.

**✻ NOTICE**

If all the vents are closed, it may cause some noise. Always open 2 vents or more.

### Automatic intake control system (if equipped)

When the heater or the air conditioner is operated, if the recirculated air position is maintained at low temperature for a certain time, the outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically for ventilation of the vehicle.

### *To cancel /return to the Automatic intake control system*

Select the vent mode at the ignition ON to cancel or be returned to the automatic intake control system. Then whilst pressing the air conditioning button (A/C), press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The indicator in the intake control button blinks 3 times with 0.5 second of interval. It indicates that the automatic intake logic is cancelled. In the other case, the indicator blinks 6 times with 0.25 second of interval. It also indicates that the automatic intake logic is returned to programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it is reset to the defog logic status.

## Windscreen defrosting and defogging

When the windscreen is covered with frost or moisture, the front view is blurred, so you should remove the frost and moisture.

**⚠ WARNING**

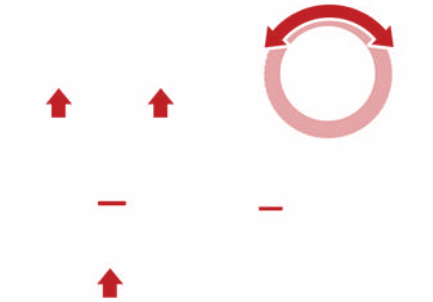
**Windscreen heating**

Do not use the or position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and the windscreen could cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the position and fan speed control to the lower speed.

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the extreme right/hot position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired whilst defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.

- Clear all snow and ice from the bonnet and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen.

## Defogging inside windscreen

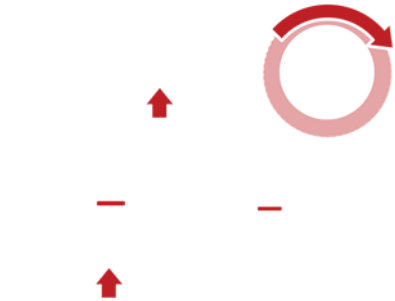


OYPI049242

1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically and the air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature.

If the air conditioning and outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.

## Defrosting outside windscreen



OYPI049243

1. Set the fan speed to the highest position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ( ).
4. The outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically and the air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature.

## Defogging logic (if equipped)

To reduce the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windscreen, the air intake or air conditioning is controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as or position.

To cancel automatic defogging logic or return to the automatic defogging logic, do the following.

### *Cancelling/returning automatic defogging logic*



OYPI049350

1. Turn the ENGINE START/STOP button to the ON position.
2. Press the defroster button ( ).
3. Whilst pressing the air conditioning (A/C) button, press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.
   The recirculation indicator blinks 3 times in 0.5 second of intervals. It indicates that the defogging logic is cancelled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

### Auto Defogging System (ADS) (if equipped)

The Auto Defogging System (ADS) reduces the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen by automatically sensing the moisture inside the windscreen.



OYPI059021

The auto defogging system operates when the AUTO mode is on.




The indicator illuminates when the ADS senses the moisture on the inside of the windscreen and operates.

If more moisture is in the vehicle, higher steps operate as follow.

Step 1: Operating the air conditioning

Step 2: Outside air position

Step 3: Blowing air flow toward the whilst

Step 4: Increasing air flow toward the whilst

If your vehicle is equipped with the auto defogging system, it is automatically activated when the conditions are met.

To cancel or reset the Auto Defogging System (ADS).

Press the front windscreen defroster button for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

When the ADS system is cancelled, Indicator on the button will blink 3 times per 0.5 sec.

When the ADS system is reset, Indicator on the button will blink 6 times per 0.25sec.

If the battery has been disconnected or discharged, it resets to the auto defogging status.

**NOTICE**

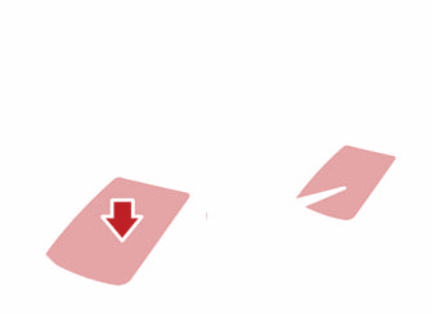
If the A/C off is manually selected whilst the auto defogging system is on, the auto defogging indicator will blink 3 times to give notice that the A/C off can not be selected.

**CAUTION**

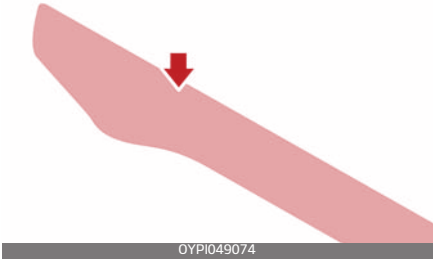
Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the passenger side windscreen glass. Damage to the system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

## Storage compartment

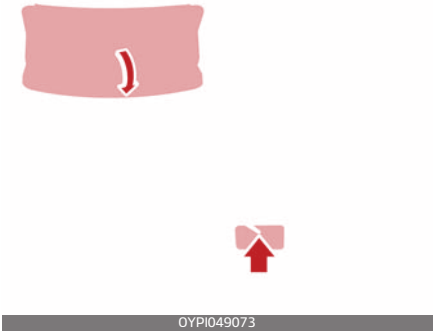
These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or passengers.



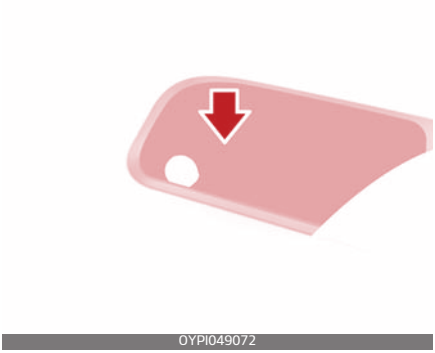
OYPI049418



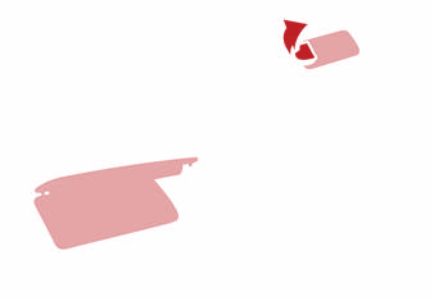
OYPI049074



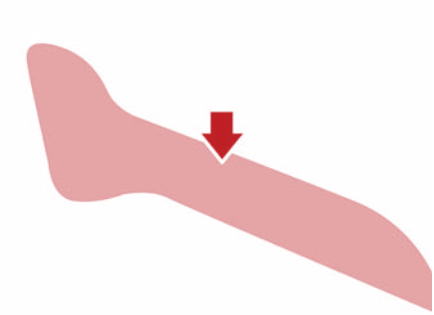
OYPI049073



OYPI049072



OYPI049071



OYPI049075

## ⚠ CAUTION

- To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartment.
- Always keep the storage compartment covers closed whilst driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover cannot close securely.

## ⚠ WARNING

**Flammable materials**

Do not store, propane cylinders or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.

### Centre console storage

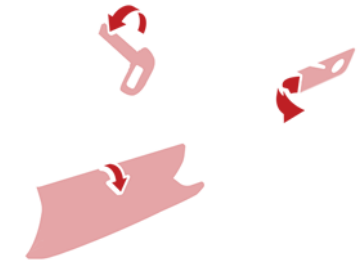


OYPI049453

To open the centre console storage:

- Pull up the cover.

## Glove box



OYPI049076

The glove box can be locked and unlocked with a mechanical key (1).

To open the glove box:

- Pull the handle (2) and the glove box will automatically open. Close the glove box after use

**⚠ WARNING**

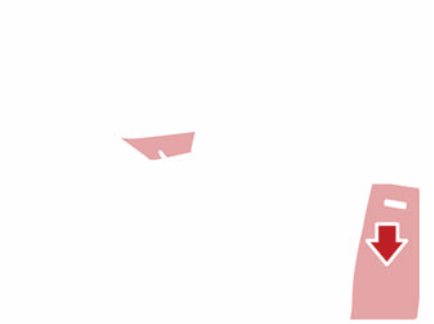
**Glove Box**

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed whilst driving.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not keep food in the glove box for a long time.

## Sunglass holder (if equipped)



OYPI049417

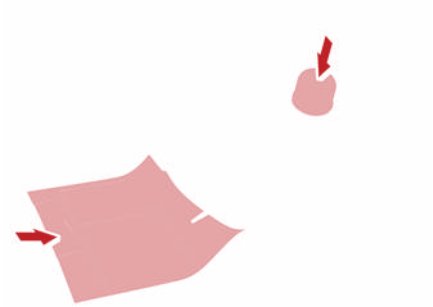
To keep the sunglass, open the centre console storage and keep it in the sunglass holder.

## Interior features

There are various features inside the vehicle for the convenience of the occupants.

### Cigarette lighter (if equipped)

For the cigarette lighter to work, the ignition switch must be in the ACC position or the ON position.



OYPI049336

- To use the cigarette lighter, push it all the way into its socket. When the element has heated, the lighter will pop out to the "ready" position.

Kia recommends to use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not hold the lighter in after it is already heated because it will overheat.
- If the lighter does not pop out within 30 seconds, remove it to prevent overheating.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the socket of the cigarette lighter. It may damage the cigarette lighter.

**⚠ CAUTION**

The use of plug-in accessories (shavers, hand-held vacuums, and coffee pots, etc.) may damage the socket or cause electrical failure.

### Ashtray (if equipped)



OYPI049337

- To use the ashtray, open the cover.
- To clean or empty the ashtray, pull it out.

Use the ashtray by leaning it to the cup holder right beside.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Ashtray use**

- Do not use the vehicle's ashtrays as waste receptacles.
- Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.

## Cup holder

Front



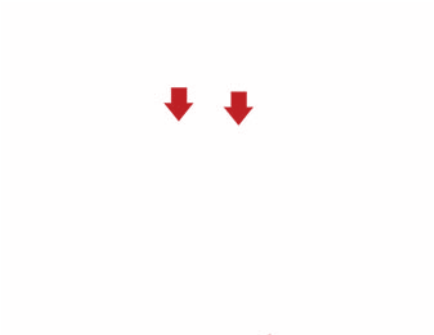
OYPI049409

Centre



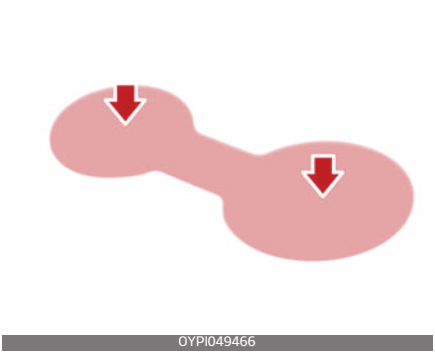
OYPI049081

Rear (if equipped)



OYPI049434

Rear (if equipped)



OYPI049466

Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Hot liquids**

- Do not place uncovered cups with hot liquid in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.
- To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop

or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion.

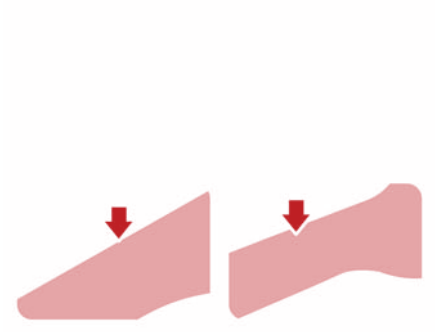
**⚠ WARNING**

Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a vehicle that is heated up. It may explode.

**✻ NOTICE**

- Keep your drinks sealed whilst driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/ electronic parts.
- When cleaning spilled liquids, do not dry the cup holder at high temperature. This may damage the cup holder.

### Bottle holder



0YPI049194

Bottles may be placed in the holder.

**✻ NOTICE**

Only bottles should be place in the holder as it is written in the vehicle "BOTTLE ONLY".

### Sun visor

Use the sun visor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.



0YPI049089

- To use the sun visor, pull it downward.

- To use the sun visor for the side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2).
- Adjust the sun visor extension forward or backward (3).
- To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and slide the mirror cover (4).
- The ticket holder (5) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket. (if equipped)

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)**

If you use the vanity mirror lamp, turn off the lamp before returning the sun visor to its original position, otherwise it could result in battery discharge and possible sunvisor damage.

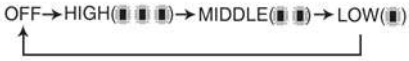
**Air ventilation seat (if equipped)**



OYPI049410

The temperature setting of the seat changes according to the switch position.

- To ventilate your seat cushion, press the switch.
  Each time you press the switch, the airflow will change as follows:




The air ventilation seat defaults to the OFF position whenever the ENGINE START/STOP button is turned on.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Seat damage**

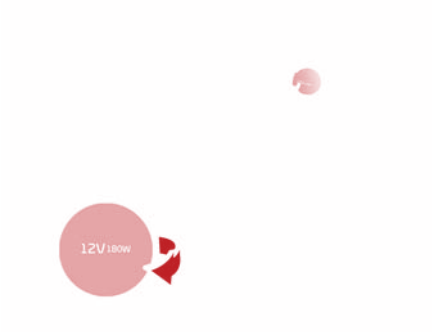
- When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and gasoline (petrol). Doing so may damage the air ventilation seat.

4

## Power outlet (if equipped)

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems.

Front



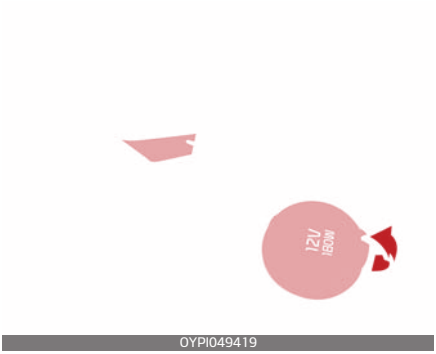

OYPI049420

Front



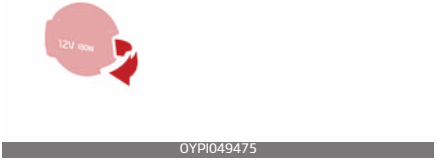
OYPI049088

Front




OYPI049419

Rear




OYPI049475

The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the vehicle on.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Use the power outlet only when the vehicle is on and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the vehicle off could cause the battery to discharge.
- Only use 12 V electric accessories which are less than 10 A in electric capacity.

- Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.
- Close the cover when not in use.
- Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.
- Push the plug in as far as it will go. If good contact is not made, the plug may overheat and the fuse may open.
- Plug in battery equipped electronic devices with reverse current protection. The current from the battery may flow into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and cause system malfunction.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electric shock**

Do not put a finger or a foreign object (pen, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may get an electric shock.

### USB charger

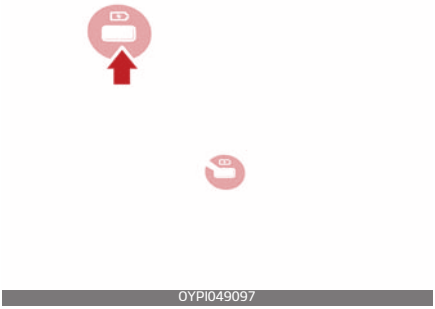
The USB car charger allows drivers to charge their digital devices like smartphone, and PC tablets.

Front

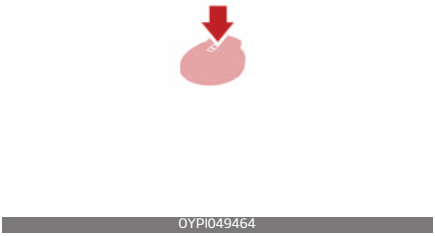


OYPI049421

Rear (if equipped)



OYPI049097



OYPI049464

Connect the cable to the USB port, charging will begin.

The USB car charger is available with either the ACC state or the ignition on. But we recommend you to connect the USB port and digital devices with the engine starting. See the display screen of the device to check its charging process completion. Your smartphone or table PC could get heated up whilst charging. This is no reason to worry, as it doesn't impact life or functions of the device. For the safety reason, charging can be stopped if the battery gets heated up to a certain point of temperature that the devices can be negatively affected. Charging some digital devices is not available or requires special dedicated adapters if their charging methods don't fit the way the USB car charger works. Quick Charge 2.0 is available on the smartphone or the table PC equipped with fast charging capabilities. The applicable is as follows: (https://www.qualcomm.com/documents/quick-charge-device-list)

The smartphone or PC tablet without fast charging is charged at a regular speed.

Rated output:

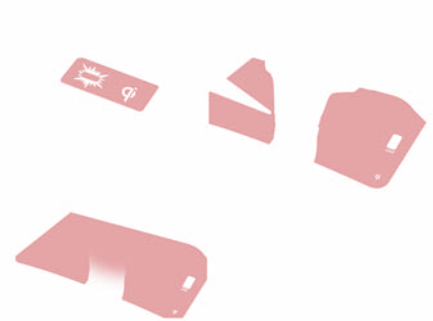
- Digital devices with fast charging:
  - 9.0 V, 1.67 A
- Digital devices with normal charging:
  - 5.0 V, 2.1 A

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Used the USB car charger with the ignition on. Otherwise, Vehicle battery can be discharged.
- Use the official USB cable of the manufacturer of the digital device to be charged.
- Make sure that any foreign object, drinks, and water do not come into contact with the USB car charger. Water or foreign object can damage the USB charger.
- Do not use the device those current consumption exceeds 2.1 A.
- Do not connect an electrical device that generates excessive electromagnetic noise to the USB car port. If you do so, noise can be caused or vehicle electronic devices can be interrupted whilst audio or AV is on.
- If the charger is connected incorrectly, it can cause serious damage on the devices. Please note that damages due to incorrect usage are not covered by warranty service.

### Wireless smart phone charging system (if equipped)

A wireless smart phone charging system is located in front of the centre console.



OYPI049411

Firmly close all doors, and turn the ignition to ACC or IGN ON. To start wireless charging, place the smart phone equipped with wireless charging function on the wireless charging pad.

For best wireless charging results, place the smart phone on the centre of the charging pad.

The wireless charging system is designed for one smart phone equipped with QI only. Please refer to the smart phone accessory cover or the smart phone manufacturer homepage to check whether your smart phone supports QI function.

**⚠ WARNING**

If any metallic object such as coins is located between the wireless charging system and the smart phone, the charging may be disrupted. Also, the metallic object may heat up.

#### *Wireless smart phone charging*

1. Remove any object on the smart phone charging pad including the smart key. If there is any foreign object on the pad other than a smart phone, the wireless charging function may not operate properly.
2. Place the smart phone on the centre of the wireless charging pad.
3. The indicator light will change to orange once the wireless charging begins. After the charging is complete, the orange light will change to green.
4. You can choose to turn the wireless charging function to either ON or OFF by selecting the USM on the instrument cluster. (Please refer to "Instrument cluster" on page 4-66 for details).

If the wireless charging does not work, gently move your smart phone around the pad until the charging indicator light turns yellow. Depending on the smart phone, the charging indicator light may not

turn green even after the charging is complete.

If the wireless charging is not functioning properly, the orange light will blink and flash for ten seconds then turn off. In such cases, remove the smart phone from the pad and replace it on the pad again, or double check the charging status.

If you leave the smart phone on the charging pad when the vehicle ignition is in OFF, the vehicle will alert you through warning messages and sound (applicable for vehicles with voice guidance function) after the 'Good bye' function on the instrument cluster ends.

### ✻ NOTICE

For some manufacturers' smart phones, the system may not warn you even though the smart phone is left on the wireless charging unit. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- When the interior temperature of the wireless charging system rises above a set temperature, the wireless charging will cease to function. After the interior temperature drops below the threshold, the wireless charging function will resume.
- If there is any metallic object between the smart phone and the wireless charging pad, immediately remove the smart phone. Remove the metallic object after it has completely cooled down.
- The wireless charging may not function properly when there is a heavy accessory cover on the smart phone.
- The wireless charging will stop when using the wireless smart key search function to prevent radio wave disruption.
- The wireless charging will stop when the smart key is moved out of the vehicle with the ignition in ON.
- The wireless charging will stop when any of the doors is opened (applicable for vehicles equipped with smart keys).
- The wireless charging will stop when the vehicle is turned OFF.
- The wireless charging will stop when the smart phone is not in complete contact with the wireless charging pad.

- Items equipped with magnetic components such as credit card, telephone card, bankbook, any transportation ticket and such may become damaged during wireless charging.
- Place the smart phone on the centre of the charge pad for best results. The smart phone may not charge when placed near the rim of the charging pad. When the smart phone does get charged, it may heat up excessively.
- For smart phones without builtin wireless charging system, an appropriate accessory has to be equipped.
- Smart phones of some manufacturers may display messages on weak current. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and does not imply a malfunction on wireless charging function.
- The indicator light of some manufacturers' smart phones may still be yellow after the smart phone is fully charged. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.
- When any smart phone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound is due to the vehicle discerning compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smart phone in any way.
- The wireless cellular phone charging system may not support certain cellular phones, which are not verified for the Qi specification ( ).
- For certain cellular phones with their own protection, the wireless charging speed may decrease and the wireless charging may stop.

## Clock

### *Hour (1)*



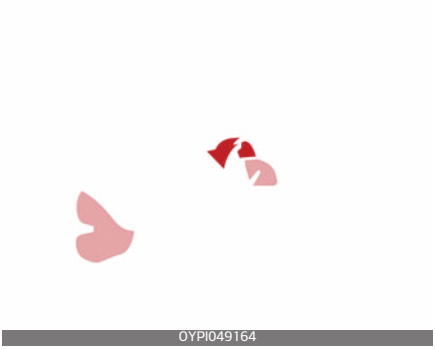

- Pressing the H button will advance the time displayed by one hour.

### *Minute (2)*

1. Pressing the "M" button will advance the time displayed by one minute.
   To change the 24 hour format to the 12 hours format (if equipped), whilst pressing the "H" button, press the "M" button for 3 seconds or more. For example, if the "H" and "M" buttons are pressed for more than 3 seconds whilst the time is 22:15, the display will change to 10:15.

### Coat hook

A Coat hook is next to the rear grab handle.



OYPI049164

* This actual feature may differ from the illustration.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Hanging clothing**

Do not hang heavy clothes, since they may damage the hook.

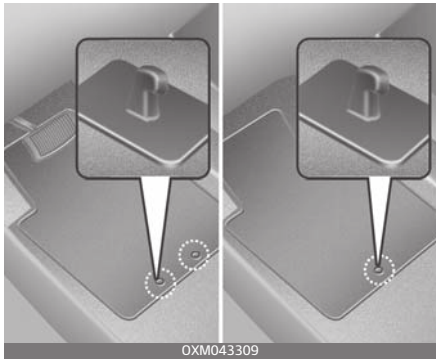
**⚠ WARNING**

Do not hang other objects such as hangers or hard objects except clothes. Also, do not put heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the clothing's pockets. In an accident or when the curtain air bag is inflated, it may cause vehicle damage or body injury.



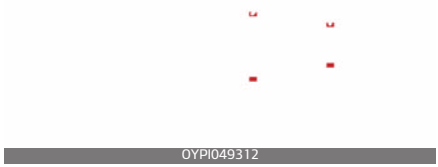
ODEEV068209NR

### Floor mat anchor(s) (if equipped)



OXM043309

Rear



OYPI049312

When using a floor mat on the front floor carpet, make sure it attaches to the floor mat anchor(s) in your vehicle. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward.

**⚠ WARNING**

**After market floor mat**

Do not install after market floor mats that are not capable of being securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.

Unsecured floor mats can interfere with pedal operation.

The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.

- Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.
- Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.
- Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g., all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.

## Side curtain (if equipped)



OYPI049092



OYPI049093

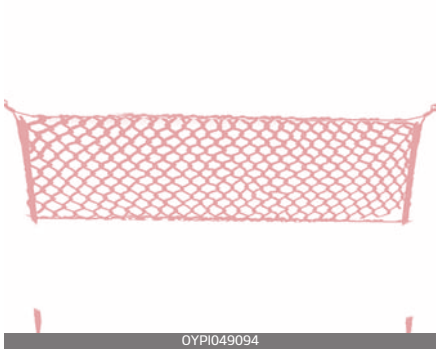
To use the side curtain:

1. Lift the curtain by the handle (1).
2. Hang the curtain on both sides of the hook.
   If the curtain is hung on one side, the curtain may be wrinkled.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Do not hang any other object except the side curtain on the hooks.
- If you pull the door curtain or apply force to return the curtain to its original position after use, you may find the curtain wrinkled or out of shape. To lower the door curtain, be sure to put the handle downward and slowly return the curtain to its original position.
- Curtains may not work properly if foreign objects (coins, toys, cookies, etc.) are stuck in the door. Be careful that the foreign objects do not get into the door.

### Luggage net holder




To keep items from shifting in the cargo area, you can use the 4 holders located in the cargo area to attach the luggage net.

**⚠ CAUTION**

To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, be careful when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.

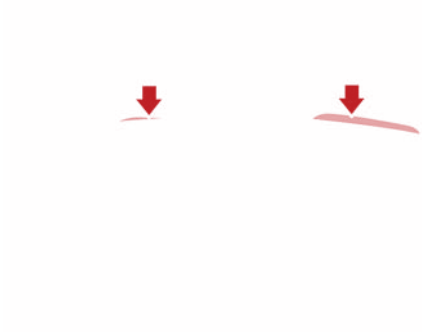
**⚠ WARNING**

Avoid eye injury. DO NOT overstretch the luggage net, ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

# Exterior features

## Roof rack (if equipped)

If the vehicle has a roof rack, you can load cargo on top of your vehicle.



OYPI049095

Crossbars and fixing components needed to install the roof rack on your vehicle may be obtained from an authorised Kia dealer/service partner or other qualified shop.

### ✻ NOTICE

- The crossbars (if equipped) should be placed in the proper load carrying positions prior to placing items onto the roof rack.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof rack in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.
- When the roof rack is not being used to carry cargo, the crossbars may need to be repositioned if wind noise is detected.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- When carrying cargo on the roof rack, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.
- When carrying large objects on the roof rack, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width.
- When you are carrying cargo on the roof rack, do not operate the sunroof. (if equipped)

### ⚠ WARNING

- The following specification is the maximum weight that can be loaded onto the roof rack. Distribute the load as evenly as possible across the crossbars (if equipped) and roof rack and secure the load firmly.

| | |
|---|---|
| ROOF RACK | 100 kg (220 lbs.)<br>EVENLY DISTRIBUTED |

Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.

- The vehicle centre of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof rack. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt maneuvers or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.
- Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof rack. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof rack. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof rack and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.
- To prevent damage or loss of cargo whilst driving, check frequently before or whilst driving to make sure the items on the roof rack are securely fastened.

## Audio system

**NOTICE**

If you install an aftermarket HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.

### Antenna



0YPI049463

The shark fin antenna will receive the transmitted data.

### USB port

You can use an USB port to plug in an USB.



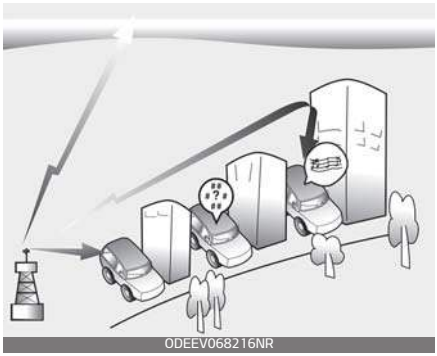

0YPI049190

## ✻ NOTICE

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.

### How vehicle radio works

#### *FM reception*

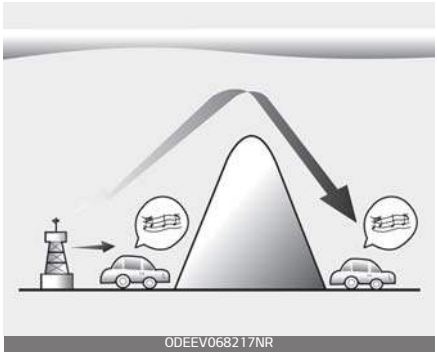

ODEEV068216NR

AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your vehicle. This signal is then processed by the radio and sent to your vehicle speakers.

However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear.

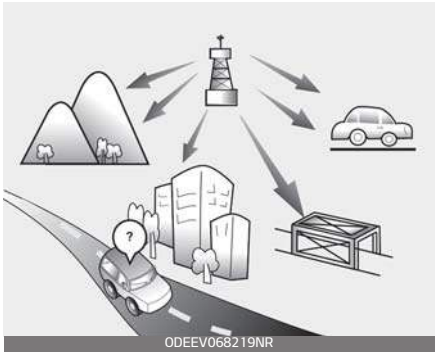
This can be due to factors, such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

#### *AM reception*


ODEEV068217NR

AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long distance, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight. In addition, they curve around obstructions resulting in better signal coverage.

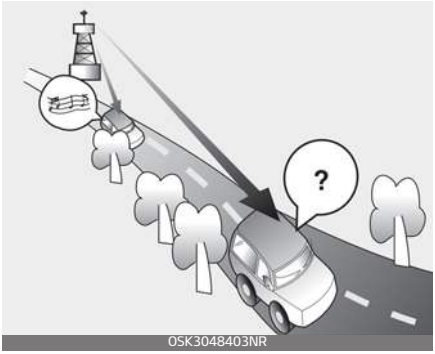
#### *FM radio station*


ODEEV068219NR

FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade within short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, and obstructions. This can lead to undesirable or unpleasant listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio.

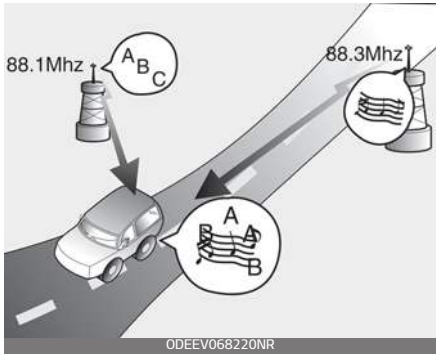
The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:

- Fading – As your vehicle moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another station with a stronger signal.



OSK3048403NR

- Flutter/Static – Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.
- Station Swapping – As an FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.



ODEEV068220NR

- Multi-Path Cancellation – Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

### *Using a cellular phone or a two-way radio*

When a cellular phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio system. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, try to operate mobile devices as far from the audio equipment as possible.

**⚠ CAUTION**

When using a communication system such as a cellular phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a cellular phone or a radio set is used with only the internal antenna, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect the safe operation of the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Cell phone use**

Do not use a cellular phone whilst driving. Stop at a safe location to use a cellular phone.

# Driving your vehicle 5


**Be sure the exhaust system does not leak. ..... 5-3**

**Before driving ..... 5-4**

**Key positions ..... 5-6**

• Illuminated ignition switch ..... 5-6
• Ignition switch position ..... 5-6
• Starting the engine ..... 5-7

**ENGINE START/STOP button ..... 5-9**

• Illuminated ENGINE START/STOP button ..... 5-9
• ENGINE START/STOP button position ..... 5-9
• Starting the engine ..... 5-11

**Automatic transmission ..... 5-14**

• Automatic transmission operation ..... 5-14
• Good driving practices ..... 5-18

**Brake system ..... 5-20**

• Power brakes ..... 5-20
• Parking brake ..... 5-22
• Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) ..... 5-23
• Auto hold ..... 5-28
• Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 5-30
• Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system ..... 5-32
• Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) ..... 5-35
• Good braking practices ..... 5-36

**Cruise control system ..... 5-37**

• Cruise control switch ..... 5-38
• Setting cruise control speed ..... 5-38
• Increasing cruise control set speed ..... 5-39
• Decreasing the cruising speed ..... 5-39
• Accelerating temporarily with the cruise control on ..... 5-40

# 5 Driving your vehicle


• Cancelling cruise control ..... 5-40
• Resuming cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h ..... 5-40
• Turning cruise control off ..... 5-41
**Active ECO system ..... 5-41**
• Active ECO operation ..... 5-41
**Economical operation ..... 5-42**
**Special driving conditions ..... 5-44**
**Winter driving ..... 5-49**
**Vehicle weight ..... 5-53**

# DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE

## Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.

The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose.

If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, have the exhaust system checked as soon as possible by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Engine exhaust**

Do not inhale exhaust fumes or leave your engine running in a enclosed area for a prolonged time. Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Open tailgate**

Do not drive with the tailgate open. Poisonous exhaust gases can enter the passenger compartment. If you must drive with the tailgate open proceed as follows:

1. Close all windows.
2. Open side vents.
3. Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face" and the fan at the highest speed.

## Before driving

Before getting into the vehicle, you should examine the car and its surroundings. After getting into the vehicle, you should check a number of things before driving.

### Before entering vehicle

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tyres.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

### Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, at the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in "Maintenance" on page 7-5.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Distracted driving**

Focus on the road whilst driving. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of the vehicle. Use of any handled devices, other equipment or vehicle systems that distract the driver should not be used during vehicle operation.

### Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Buckle your seat belt.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ENGINE START/STOP button is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light is not on.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Fire risk**

When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and cause fire.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Check surroundings**

Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before putting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).

**⚠ WARNING**

**Loose objects**

Securely store items in your vehicle. When you make a sudden stop or turn the steering wheel rapidly, loose objects may drop on the floor and it could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving whilst intoxicated**

Do not drive whilst intoxicated. Drinking and driving is dangerous. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment.

Driving whilst under the influence of drugs is as dangerous as or more dangerous than driving drunk.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Proper footwear**

Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots, sandals, etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedals.

## Key positions (if equipped)

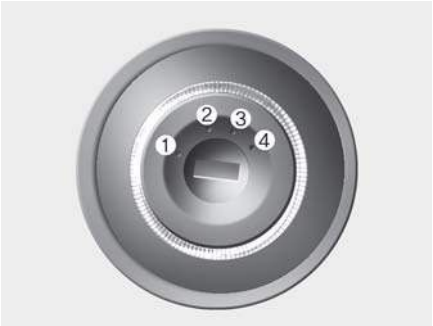
### Illuminated ignition switch (if equipped)



OYPI059028

Whenever a front door is opened, the ignition switch will be illuminated for your convenience, provided the ignition switch is not in the ON position. The light will go off immediately when the ignition switch is turned on or go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

### Ignition switch position




OSK3058160NR

***LOCK (1)***

The steering wheel locks to protect against theft. The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position.

***ACC (Accessory) (2)***

The steering wheel is unlocked and electrical accessories are operative.

**✻ NOTICE**

If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

***ON (3)***

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.

***START (4)***

Turn the ignition switch to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning light can be checked in this position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Ignition switch**

- Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC whilst the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.
- The anti-theft steering column lock (if equipped) is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is P (Park) for the automatic transmission, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.
- Never reach for the ignition switch, or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.
- Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.

## Starting the engine

**⚠ WARNING**

- Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots, etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal.
- Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. The vehicle can move and lead to an accident.
- Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake pedal is released when the rpm is high.

To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Place the transmission shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.
   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position to pre-heat the engine. Then the glow indicator light will illuminate.

Glow indicator light




4. If the glow indicator light goes out, turn the ignition switch to the START position and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

## ✻ NOTICE

- If the engine does not start within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK position for 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.

### *Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler*

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.
   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off.
   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

## ⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbocharger unit.

## ⚠ CAUTION

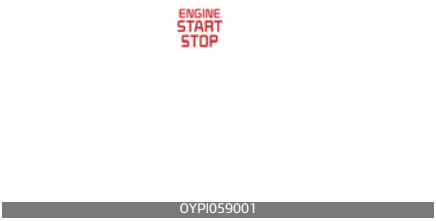
If the engine stalls whilst you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and turn the ignition switch to the START position in an attempt to restart the engine.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- Do not engage the starter for more than 10 seconds. If the engine stalls or fails to start, wait 5 to 10 seconds before re-engaging the starter. Improper use of the starter may damage it.
- Do not turn the ignition switch to the START position with the engine running. It may damage the starter.

## ENGINE START/STOP button (if equipped)

### Illuminated ENGINE START/STOP button




OYPI059001

Whenever the front door is opened, the ENGINE START/STOP button will illuminate for your convenience. The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. It will also go off immediately when the ENGINE START/STOP button is ON position.

### ENGINE START/STOP button position

Your vehicle is equipped with four different ignition positions.

#### *OFF*

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), press the ENGINE START/STOP button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position. When you press the ENGINE START/STOP button without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the ENGINE START/STOP button will not change to the OFF position but to the ACC position.

### Vehicles equipped with anti-theft steering column lock

The steering wheel locks when the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the OFF position to protect you against theft.
It locks when the door is opened.
If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound. Try locking the steering wheel again. If the problem is not solved, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
In addition, if the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the OFF position after the driver's door is opened, the steering wheel will not lock and the warning chime will sound. In such a situation, close the door. Then the steering wheel will lock and the warning chime will stop.

**✻ NOTICE**

If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the ENGINE START/STOP button will not work. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

## ⚠ CAUTION

You are able to turn off the engine (START/RUN) or vehicle power (ON), only when the vehicle is not in motion. In an emergency situation whilst the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds. If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

### *ACC (Accessory)*

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button whilst it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.

The steering wheel unlocks (if equipped with anti-theft steering column lock) and electrical accessories are operational.

If the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the button is turned off automatically to prevent battery discharge.

### *ON*

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button whilst it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave the ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position for a long time. The battery may discharge, because the engine is not running.

### *START/RUN*

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/STOP button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

## ✻ NOTICE

If you press the ENGINE START/STOP button without depressing the brake pedal for automatic transmission vehicles, the engine will not start and the ENGINE START/STOP button changes as follow:
OFF → ACC → ON → OFF or ACC

## ✻ NOTICE

If you leave the ENGINE START/STOP button in the ACC or ON position for a long time, the battery will discharge.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Never press the ENGINE START/STOP button whilst the vehicle is in motion. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.
- The anti-theft steering column lock (if equipped) is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.
- Never reach for the engine start/stop button or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in the area could cause loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.
- Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.

## Starting the engine

**⚠ WARNING**

- Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator.
- Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. The vehicle can move and lead to an accident.
- Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake padel is released when the rpm is high.

To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Place the transmission shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.
   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.




3. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button whilst depressing the brake pedal.

4. Continue depressing the brake pedal until the illuminated glow indicator goes off. (approximately 5 seconds)
5. The engine starts running when the glow indicator goes off.

## ✻ NOTICE

If the ENGINE START/STOP button is pressed once more whilst the engine is pre-heating, the engine may start.

### Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.
   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off. This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

## ⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbocharger unit.

- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from you, the engine may not start.
- When the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC position or above, if any door is opened, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, a message "Key is not in the vehicle" will appear on the LCD display. And if all doors are closed, the chime will sound for 5 seconds. The indicator or warning will turn off whilst the vehicle is moving. Always have the smart key with you.

## ⚠ WARNING

The engine will start, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.

Never allow children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle touch the ENGINE START/STOP button or related parts.

## ⚠ CAUTION

If the engine stalls whilst the vehicle is in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If the traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and press the ENGINE START/STOP button in an attempt to restart the engine.

## ✻ NOTICE



OYPI059005

- If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button with the smart key.
  The side with the lock button should be contacted directly.
  When you press the ENGINE START/STOP button directly with the smart key, the smart key should contact the button at a right angle.
- When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you cannot start the engine normally.
  Replace the fuse with a new one. If it is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button for 10 seconds whilst it is in the ACC position. The engine can start without depressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the engine.

## ⚠ CAUTION

Do not press the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.

## Automatic transmission



OYPI059194

Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.

(If the shift lock system is not equipped, it is not necessary to depress the brake pedal. However, it is recommended to depress the brake pedal to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle.)

Press the lock release button when shifting.

The shift lever can be shifted freely.

### Automatic transmission operation

The automatic transmission has 8 forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

**NOTICE**

The first few shifts on a new vehicle, if the battery has been disconnected, may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and the shifting sequence will adjust after shifts are cycled a few times by the TCM (Transmission Control Module) or PCM (Powertrain Control Module).

For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.

**WARNING**

**Automatic transmission**

- Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).
- Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.
- Do not use the engine brake (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads.
  The vehicle may slip causing an accident.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- To avoid damage to your transmission, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on.
- When stopped on an incline, do not hold the vehicle stationary with engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.
- Do not shift from N (Neutral) or P (Park) into D (Drive), or R (Reverse) when the engine is above idle speed.

### *Transmission ranges*

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

### *P (Park)*

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from rotating.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is latched in the P (Park) position and set the parking brake fully.
- Never leave a child unattended in a vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

The transmission may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion.

### *R (Reverse)*

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transmission if you shift into R whilst the vehicle is in motion, except as explained in "Reducing the risk of a rollover" on page 5-45.

### *N (Neutral)*

The wheels and transmission are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral).

The engine brake will not work and lead to an accident.

### *Parking in N (Neutral) gear*

Follow below steps when parking and you want the vehicle to move when pushed.

1. After parking your vehicle, step on the brake pedal and move the shift lever to "P" with the ignition button in "ON" or whilst the engine is running.
2. If the parking brake is applied unlock the parking brake.
3. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, turn the ignition button "OFF".
   - For smart key equipped vehicles, the ignition switch can be moved to "OFF" only when the shift lever is in "P".
4. Change the gear shift lever to "N" (Neutral) whilst pressing the brake pedal and pushing "SHIFT LOCK RELEASE" button. Then, the vehicle will move when external force is applied.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- With the exception of parking in neutral gear, always park the vehicle in "P" (Park) for safety and engage the parking brake.
- Before parking in "N" (Neutral) gear, first make sure the parking ground is level and flat. Do not park in "N" gear on any slopes or gradients.
  If parked and left in "N", the vehicle may move and cause serious damage and injury.

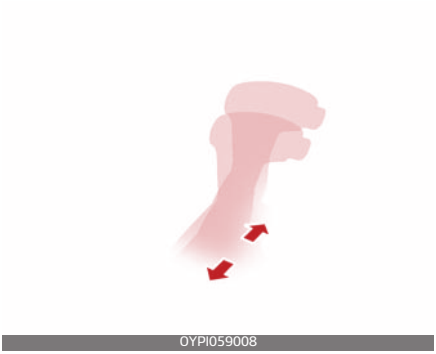
### D (Drive)

This is the normal forward driving position. The transmission will automatically shift through a 8-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

**✻ NOTICE**

- Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).
- A clicking noise heard from the kick down mechanism by depressing the accelerator pedal fully is a normal condition.

## Manual mode



OYPI059008

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, manual mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.
In manual mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly.
Up (+): Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.
Down (–): Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

### ✻ NOTICE

- In manual mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.
- In manual mode, only the 8 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.
- In manual mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.
- In manual mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone shift points are varied to upshift automatically.
- To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.
- When driving on a slippery road, push the shift lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transmission to shift into the 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving on a slippery road. Push the shift lever to the –(down) side to shift back to the 1st gear.

### *Shift lock system*

For your safety, the automatic transmission has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse):
1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

**⚠ WARNING**

Always fully depress the brake pedal before and whilst shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.

### *Shift-lock override*



OYPI059292

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

1. Press the shift-lock release button.
2. Move the shift lever.
3. Have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transmission in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be

especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.
- Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.
- Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
- The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.
- Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.
- In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.
- Never exceed posted speed limits.

**⚠ WARNING**

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward of backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

***Moving up a steep grade from a standing start***

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually whilst releasing the service brakes.

**When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards. Shifting the shift lever into 2 (Second Gear) will help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.**

## Brake system

### Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Brakes**

- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.
- When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.
- Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way.
  Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly whilst maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.
- Always, confirm the position of the brake and accelerator pedal before driving. If you don't check the position of the accelerator and brake pedal before driving, you may depress the accelerator instead of the brake pedal. It may cause a serious accident.

### *In the event of brake failure*

If service brakes fail to operate whilst the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Parking brake**

Applying the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and make endanger driving safety.

### *Disc brakes wear indicator*

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes (if equipped). You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.
- Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Brake wear**

This brake wear warning sound means your vehicle needs service. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.

## Parking brake (if equipped)

After parking the vehicle, apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from being moved by the external force.

### *Applying the parking brake*

#### *Foot type*




OYPI059009

To engage the parking brake:

1. Apply the foot brake and then depress the parking brake pedal down as far as possible.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad (or lining) and brake rotor wear.
- Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and make endanger driving safety.

### *Releasing the parking brake*

#### *Foot type*




OYPI059010

To release the parking brake:

1. Depress the parking brake pedal a second time whilst applying the foot brake. The pedal will automatically extend to the fully released position.

**⚠ WARNING**

- To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the shift lever instead of the parking brake. Set the parking brake AND make sure the shift lever is securely positioned in P (Park) for automatic transmission equipped vehicles.
- Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.
- All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged

when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.

Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

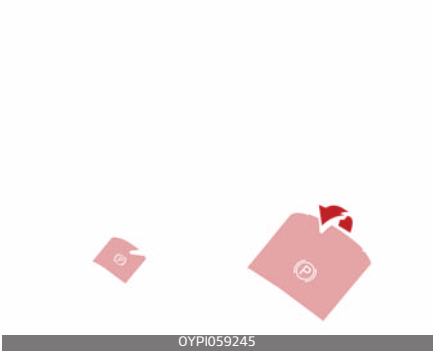
If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released whilst the engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution whilst operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

## Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) (if equipped)

### *Applying the parking brake*

#### *To apply the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):*



OYPI059245

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the warning light comes on.

Also, the EPB is applied automatically if the Auto Hold button is on when the engine is turned off. However, if you keep pressing the EPB switch till the engine is turned off, the EPB will not be applied.

**✻ NOTICE**

On a steep incline or when pulling a trailer if the vehicle does not stand still, do as follows:

1. Apply the EPB.
2. Pull up the EPB switch for more than 3 seconds.

## ⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and endanger driving safety.

***Releasing the parking brake***

***To release the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake), press the EPB switch in the following condition:***



OYPI059241

- Have the ignition switch or ENGINE START/STOP button in the ON position.
- Depress the brake pedal.

Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

***To release EPB (Electronic parking brake) automatically:***

- Shift lever in P (Park)
  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Shift lever in N (Neutral)
  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of N (Neutral) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Automatic Transmission
  1. Start the engine.
  2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
  3. Close the driver's door, engine bonnet and tailgate.
  4. Depress the accelerator pedal whilst the shift lever is in R (Rear), D (Drive) or manual mode.

Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

## ✻ NOTICE

- For your safety, you can engage the EPB even though the ignition switch or engine stop/start button is in the OFF position, but you cannot release it.
- For your safety, depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch when you drive downhill or when backing up the vehicle.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- If the parking brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an

authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.
- Do not drive your vehicle with the EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.

***EPB (Electronic parking brake) may be automatically applied when:***
- The EPB is overheated
- Requested by other systems

## NOTICE

If the driver turns the engine off by mistake whilst Auto Hold is operating, EPB will be automatically applied. (Vehicle's equipped with Auto Hold)

***System warning***




OCD058083

- If you try to drive off depressing the accelerator pedal with the EPB applied, but doesn't release automatically, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the engine bonnet or tailgate is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

If the above situation occurs, depress the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.

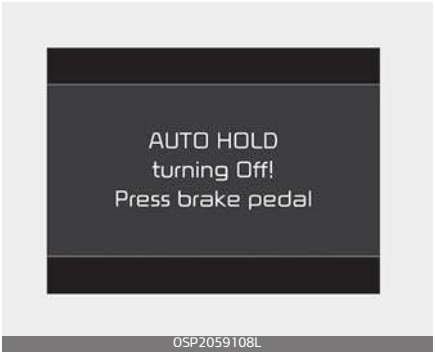
## ⚠ WARNING

- To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the shift lever in place of the parking brake. Set the parking brake and make sure the shift lever is securely positioned in P (Park).
- Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.
- All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the car which can injure occupants or pedestrians.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- A click sound may be heard whilst operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.
- When leaving your keys with a parking lot attendant or valet, make sure to inform him/her how to operate the EPB.
- The EPB may malfunction if you drive with the EPB applied.
- When you automatically release EPB by depressing the accelerator pedal, depress it slowly.

### *System warning*



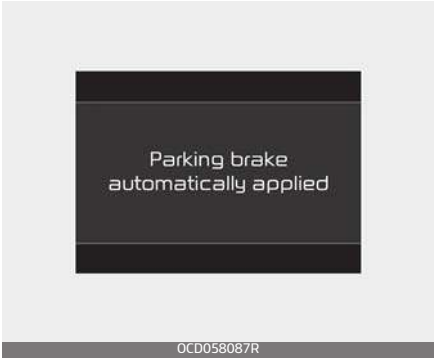

OSP2059108L

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

## ⚠ CAUTION

Depress the brake pedal when the above message appears for the Auto Hold and EPB may not activate.

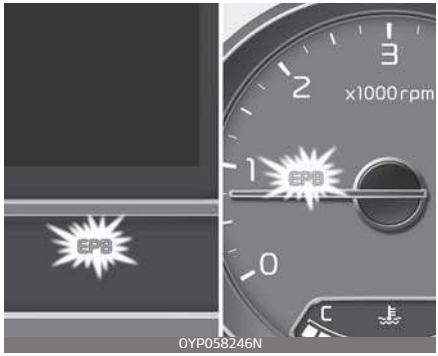
### *System warning*




OCD058087R

If the EPB is applied whilst Auto Hold is activated because of ESC (Electronic Stability Control) signal, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

### *EPB malfunction indicator (if equipped)*




OYP058246N

This warning light illuminates if the ENGINE START/STOP button is changed to the ON position and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operation normally.

If the EPB malfunction indicator remains on, comes on whilst driving, or does not come on when the ignition switch or the ENGINE START/STOP button is changed to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The EPB malfunction indicator may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the EPB.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- The EPB warning light may illuminate if the EPB switch operates abnormally. Shut the engine off and turn it on again after a few minutes. The warning light will go off and the EPB switch will operate normally. However, if the EPB warning light is still on, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- If the parking brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, the EPB is not applied.
- If the parking brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, then pull it up. Once more press it back to its original position and pull it back up. If the EPB warning does not go off, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Emergency braking*

If there is a problem with the brake pedal whilst driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only whilst you are holding the EPB switch.

### ✻ NOTICE

During emergency braking by the EPB, the parking brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation.

### *When the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) does not release*

If the EPB does not release normally, load the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If you continuously notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, have the system checked by a professional workshop.
Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Auto hold (if equipped)

The Auto Hold maintains the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not depressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal.

1. Depress the brake pedal, start the engine and then press the Auto Hold button. The white AUTO HOLD indicator will come on indicating the system is in standby. Before the Auto Hold will engage, the driver's door, engine bonnet and tailgate must be closed and the driver's seat belt must be fastened.




0YPI059214

2. When coming to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from white to green indicating the AUTO HOLD is engaged and EPB is applied. The vehicle will remain at a standstill even if you release the brake pedal.




0YPI059215

3. If EPB is applied, Auto Hold will be released.

4. If you press the accelerator pedal with the shift lever in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or sports mode, the Auto Hold will be released automatically and the vehicle will start to move.
   The indicator changes from green to white indicating the Auto Hold is in standby and the EPB is released.

When driving off from Auto Hold by depressing the accelerator pedal, always check the surrounding area near your vehicle.

Slowly depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth launch.

### *Cancel*




OYPI059216

- To cancel the Auto Hold operation, press the Auto Hold switch. The AUTO HOLD indicator will go out.
- To cancel the Auto Hold operation when the vehicle is at a standstill, press the Auto Hold switch whilst depressing the brake pedal.

## ✻ NOTICE

- The following are conditions when the Auto Hold will not engage (Auto Hold light will not turn green and the Auto Hold system remains in stand by):
  - The driver's seat belt is unfastened and driver's door is opened.
  - The engine bonnet is opened.
  - The tailgate is opened.
  - The shift lever is in P (Park).
  - The EPB is applied.
- For your safety, the Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB under any of the following conditions (Auto Hold light remains white and the EPB automatically applies):
  - The driver's seat belt is unfastened and driver's door is opened.
  - The engine bonnet is opened.
  - The tailgate is opened.
  - The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes.
  - The vehicle is standing on a steep slope.
  - The vehicle moved several times.
    In these cases, the brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sounds and a message will appear to inform you that EPB has been automatically

engaged. Before driving off again, press foot brake pedal, check the surrounding area near your vehicle and release parking brake manually with the EPB switch.

– If the AUTO HOLD indicator lights up yellow, the Auto Hold is not working properly. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

To reduce the risk of an accident, do not activate Auto Hold whilst driving downhill, backing up or parking your vehicle.

If there is a malfunction with the driver's door, engine bonnet or tailgate open detection system, the Auto Hold may not work properly.

Take your vehicle to an authorised Kia dealer and have the system checked.

**✻ NOTICE**

A click or electric brake motor whine sound may be heard whilst operating or releasing the EPB, but these conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.

### Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

The Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking. So the vehicle remains stable and can still be steered.

ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions. The vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds in the following circumstances:

- When driving on rough, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tyre chains installed
- When driving on roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface heights.

Driving in these conditions increases the stopping distance for your vehicle.

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a "tik-tik" sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the

brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible to allow the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

### ✻ NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the vehicle compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the vehicle is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Anti-lock Brake System is functioning properly.

Even with the Anti-lock Brake System, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.

Always slow down when cornering. The Anti-lock Brake System cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.

On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the Anti-lock Brake System may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON.




During that time, the ABS will go through selfdiagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. Contact an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.

When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and have operated your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and stop the vehicle.

Restart the vehicle. If the ABS warning light goes off, then your ABS is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. Contact an authorised Kia dealer as soon as possible.

### ✻ NOTICE

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the vehicle may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of low battery voltage. It

does not mean your ABS has malfunctioned.

- Do not pump your brakes!
- Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.

### Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system (if equipped)

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is designed to stabilise the vehicle during cornering maneuvers.



OYPI059011

ESC applies the brakes on individual wheels and intervenes with the vehicle management system to stabilise the vehicle.

ESC will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents.

Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding maneuvers that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving – including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.

**⚠ WARNING**

Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. Electronic stability Control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding maneuvers that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving – including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.

The ESC system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the

wheels, you may hear a "tik-tik" sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

### ✻ NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the vehicle compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the vehicle is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic Stability Control system is functioning properly.

## *ESC operation*

### ESC ON condition

- When the ENGINE START/STOP button is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the vehicle ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the vehicle, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

### When operating

When the ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks. When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
When moving out of the mud or driving on a slippery road, pressing the accelerator pedal may not cause the vehicle rpm (revolutions per minute) to increase.
This is to maintain the stability and traction of the vehicle and does not indicate a problem.

## *ESC operation off*

This car has 2 kinds of ESC off states.
If the vehicle stops when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the vehicle, the ESC will automatically turn on again.



OSP2I059016

### ESC off state 1

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF) for less than 3 seconds and the ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF) will illuminate.
At this state, the engine control function does not operate. It means the traction control function does not operate. Brake control function only operates.




### ESC off state 2

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF) for more than 3 seconds. ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF) will illuminate and ESC OFF warning chime will sound. At this state, the engine control function and brake control function do not operate. It means the car stability control function does not operate any more.

### *Indicator light*

ESC indicator light



ESC OFF indicator light




When the ignition switch is turned to ON, the indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating or illuminates when ESC fails to operate.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electronic Stability Control**

Drive carefully even though your vehicle has Electronic Stability Control. It can only assist you in maintaining control under certain circumstances.

### *ESC OFF usage*

#### When driving

- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Operating ESC**

Never press the ESC OFF button whilst ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).

If ESC is turned off whilst ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.

**✻ NOTICE**

- When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off by pressing the ESC OFF button for more than 3 seconds (ESC OFF light illuminated).
  If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.
- Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.

### Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) (if equipped)

A vehicle has the tendency to slip back on a steep hill when it starts to go after stopping. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from slipping back by operating the brakes automatically for about 1~2 seconds. The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after about 1~2 seconds.

**⚠ WARNING**

The HAC is activated only for about 1~2 seconds, so when the vehicle is starting off always depress the accelerator pedal.

**✻ NOTICE**

- The HAC does not operate when the transmission shift lever is in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.
- The HAC activates even though the ESC is off but it does not activate when the ESC has malfunctioned.

## Good braking practices

**⚠ WARNING**

- Whenever you leave or park your vehicle, always set the parking brake as far as possible and fully engage the vehicle's transmission into the P (Park) position. If the parking brake is not fully engaged, the vehicle may move inadvertently and injure yourself and others.
- All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.

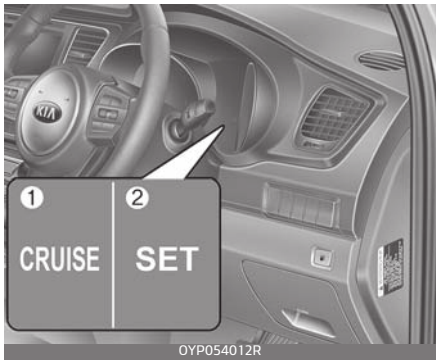
- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and that the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the vehicle is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.
  To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to call an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Do not coast down hills with the vehicle out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the vehicle in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.
- Do not "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal whilst driving can be dangerous because it can result in the brakes overheating and losing their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead whilst you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.
- If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, do not let your vehicle creep forward. To avoid creeping forward, keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped.
- Be cautious when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (automatic transmission). If your

vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling.
If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no kerb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.

- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet.
  If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shift lever in P (automatic transmission) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transmission to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

## Cruise control system

The cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a constant speed without pressing the accelerator pedal.




1. Cruise indicator
2. Cruise set indicator

This system is designed to function above approximately 30 km/h.

### ⚠ WARNING

- If the cruise control is left on, (CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated) the cruise control can be switched on accidentally. Keep the cruise control system off (CRUISE indicator light OFF) when the cruise control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.
- Use the cruise control system only when travelling on open highways in good weather.
- Do not use the cruise control when it may not be safe to keep

the car at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% uphill or downhill roads.
- Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the cruise control system.
- Be careful when driving downhill using the cruise control system, which may increase the vehicle speed.

**NOTICE**

During normal cruise control operation, when the SET switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.

**NOTICE**

To activate cruise control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel cruise control is in normal condition.

### Cruise control switch




OYP057169L

- CANCEL: Cancels cruise control operation.
- CRUISE: Turns cruise control system on or off.
- RES+: Resumes or increases cruise control speed.
- SET-: Sets or decreases cruise control speed.

### Setting cruise control speed

1. Press the CRUISE button on the steering wheel, to turn the system on. The cruise indicator light will illuminate.




OYPI059013

2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 30 km/h.
3. Move the lever down (to SET–), and release it at the desired speed. The cruise status on the LCD screen will appear. Release the accelerator pedal at the same time. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.
   On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly whilst going downhill.



OYPI059014

## Increasing cruise control set speed



OYPI059015

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever up (to RES+) and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will increase by 10 km/h. Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move the lever up (to RES+) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 2.0 km/h each time you move the lever up (to RES+) in this manner.

## Decreasing the cruising speed



OYPI059014

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move the lever down (to SET–) and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will decrease by 10 km/h. Release the lever at the speed you want to maintain.
- Move the lever down (to SET–) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 2.0 km/h each time you move the lever down (to SET–) in this manner.

### Accelerating temporarily with the cruise control on

- If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with cruise control operation or change the set speed.
- To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

### Cancelling cruise control




OYPI059016

Follow either of these procedures:

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Shift into N (Neutral) if equipped with an automatic transmission.
- Press the CANCEL switch located on the steering wheel.
- Decrease the vehicle speed lower than the memory speed by 20 km/h.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to less than approximately 25 km/h.

Each of these actions will cancel cruise control operation (the cruise set indicator light will go off), but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to resume cruise control operation, move up the lever (to RES+) located on your steering wheel. You will return to your previously preset speed.

### Resuming cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h



OYPI059015

If any method other than the CRUISE button was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when you move the lever up (to RES+).

It will not resume, however, if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 30 km/h.

### Turning cruise control off



OYPI059013

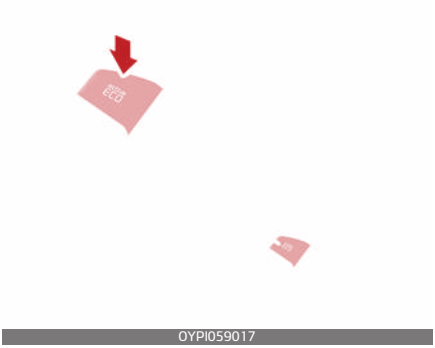
Follow either of these procedures:

- Press the CRUISE button (The cruise status on the LCD screen will disappear).
- If your vehicle equipped the speed limit system, press the CRUISE button twice. (The cruise indicator light will be turn off.)

Both of these actions cancel cruise control operation. If you want to resume cruise control operation, repeat the steps provided in "Setting cruise control speed" on page 5-38.

## Active ECO system

### Active ECO operation



OYPI059017

Active ECO helps improve fuel efficiency by controlling the engine and transmission. But fuel-efficiency can be affected by the driver's driving habits and road conditions.

- When the Active ECO button is pressed the ECO indicator (green) will illuminate to show that the Active ECO is operating.
- When the Active ECO is activated, it does not turn off even though the engine is restarted again. To turn off the system, press the active ECO button again.
- If Active ECO is turned off, it will return to the normal mode.

***When Active ECO is activated:***

- The engine noise may get louder.
- The vehicle speed may slightly be reduced.
- The air conditioner performance may be affected.

***Limitation of Active ECO operation:***

If the following conditions occur whilst Active ECO is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

- When the coolant temperature is low:
  The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.
- When driving up a hill:
  The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because the engine torque is restricted.
- When the accelerator pedal is deeply pressed for a few seconds:
  The system will be limited, as it has determined that the driver has accelerated judging that the driver wants to speed up.

## Economical operation

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many kilometers (miles) you can get from a litre (gallon) of fuel.To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Do not make "jackrabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Do not race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to the traffic so you do not have to change speeds unnecessarily.
  Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Do not "ride" the brake pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the

brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.

- Take care of your tyres. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tyre wear. Check the tyre pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting kerbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tyre wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your vehicle in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain vehicle in accordance with "Normal maintenance schedule" on page 7-13. If you drive your vehicle in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required (see "Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions" on page 7-14 for details).
- Keep your vehicle clean. For maximum service, your vehicle should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the vehicle. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Do not let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.
- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warmup period.
- Do not "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in too high a gear resulting engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speeds.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. Therefore, have the system serviced by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Engine off during motion**

Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. Instead, keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for engine braking effect. In addition, turning off the ignition whilst driving could engage the steering wheel lock (if equipped) resulting in loss of vehicle steering which could cause serious injury or death.

## Special driving conditions

### Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking or steering.
- When braking with non-ABS brakes pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.

**⚠ WARNING**

**ABS**

Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.

- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, tyre chains, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Downshifting**

Downshifting with an automatic transmission, whilst driving on slippery surfaces can cause an accident. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. Be

careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.

### Reducing the risk of a rollover

This multi-purpose passenger vehicle is defined as a MPV (Multi Purpose Vehicle).

MPVs have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of road applications. Specific design characteristics give them a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road, which allows you to anticipate problems. They are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional passenger vehicles. Due to this risk, driver and passengers are strongly recommended to buckle their seat belts. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. There are steps that a driver can make to reduce the risk of a rollover. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres, do not load your roof rack with heavy cargo, and never modify your vehicle in any way.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Rollover**

As with other Multi-Purpose Vehicle (MPV), failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

- Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, narrower track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles.
- A MPV is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional vehicles.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres.
- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Make sure everyone in the vehicle is properly buckled up.

**⚠ WARNING**

Your vehicle is equipped with tyres designed to provide safe ride and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tyre and wheel that is different from the one that is originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tyres,

be sure to equip all four tyres with the tyre and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity. If you nevertheless decide to equip your vehicle with any tyre/wheel combination not recommended by Kia for off road driving, you should not use these tyres for highway driving.

### Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and any forward gear in vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission. Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transmission.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Prolonged rocking may cause engine over-heating, transmission damage or failure, and tyre damage.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Spinning tyres**

Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 56 km/h (35 mph). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tyre to overheat which could result in tyre damage that may injure bystanders.

**✻ NOTICE**

The ESC system should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

## Smooth cornering


OYPI059153

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tyre wear will be held to a minimum.

## Driving at night


OYPI059154

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed on vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

## Driving in the rain


OYPI059155

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement.

Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windscreen wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.
- If your tyres are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tyres are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly. If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly whilst driving until normal braking operation returns.

### Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Water logged area**

Avoid driving into or starting the vehicle in a heavily water logged area. Vehicle may breakdown or engine may fail due to water entering engine or short circuit of electrical systems. If vehicle stuck in deep water, do not start / crank the engine. Kia recommends to consult an authorized Kia dealer/ service partner.

### Driving off-road

Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks of roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

### Highway driving

#### Tyres




Adjust the tyre inflation pressures to specification. Low tyre inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tyres. Avoid using worn or damaged tyres which may result in reduced traction or tyre failure.

**NOTICE**

Never exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure shown on the tyres.

**WARNING**

- Underinflated or overinflated tyres can cause poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. Always check the tyres for proper inflation before driving. For proper tyre pressures, refer to "Tyres and wheels" on page 8-5.
- Driving on tyres with no or insufficient tread is dangerous. Worn-out tyres can result in loss of vehicle control, collisions, injury, and even death. Worn-out tyres should be replaced as soon as possible and should never be used for driving. Always check the tyre tread before driving your vehicle. For further information and tread limits, refer to "Tyres and wheels" on page 8-5.

### Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil

High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both engine coolant and engine oil.

### Drive belt

A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.

## Winter driving

Severe weather conditions in the winter result in greater wear and other problems.

To minimise the problems of winter driving, you should follow these suggestions:

### Snowy or icy conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tyres or to install tyre chains on your tyres.

If snow tyres are needed, it is necessary to select tyres equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tyres. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.

During deceleration, use vehicle braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front of your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently. It should be noted that installing tyre chains on the tyre will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.

## NOTICE

Tyre chains are not legal in all countries. Check the country laws before fitting tyre chains.

### Snow tyres

If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tyres of the same size and load range as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tyres on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

## WARNING

**Snow tyre size**

Snow tyres should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tyres. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

Do not install studded tyres without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.

### Tyre chains




Since the sidewalls of radial tyres are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tyres is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tyre chains on vehicles equipped with aluminium wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use wire-type chains with a thickness of less than 12 mm. Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturers warranty.

Install tyre chains only on the front tyres.

## CAUTION

- Make sure the snow chains are the correct size and type for your tyres. Incorrect snow chains can cause damage to the vehicle body and suspension and may not be

covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty. Also, the snow chain connecting hooks may be damaged from contacting vehicle components causing the snow chains to come loose from the tyre. Make sure the snow chains are SAE class "S" certified.
- Always check chain installation for proper mounting after driving approximately 0.5 to 1 km to ensure safe mounting. Retighten or remount the chains if they are loose.

### Chain installation

When installing chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as you can. Drive slowly with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until it stops. Remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Mounting chains**

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning flashers and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle if available. Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing snow chains.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Tyre chains**

- The use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- Do not exceed 30 km/h or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.
- Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.
- Avoid sharp turns or locked wheel braking.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Chains that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.
- Stop driving and retighten the chains any time you hear them hitting the vehicle.

### Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant refer to "Normal maintenance schedule" on page 7-13. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

### Check battery and cables

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables (refer to "For best battery service" on page 7-33). The level of charge in your battery can be checked by an authorised Kia dealer or a service station.

### Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" on page 8-6 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Check ignition system

All ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

### To keep locks from freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

### Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorised Kia dealer and most auto parts outlets. Do not use vehicle coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

### Don't let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shift lever in P (Park) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

### Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. In severe winter conditions you should periodically check underneath the vehicle to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components are not obstructed.

### Carry emergency equipment

Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

## Vehicle weight

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer.

Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's specifications and the compliance label:

**Base kerb weight** This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle kerb weight** This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

**Cargo weight** This figure includes all weight added to the Base Kerb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the compliance label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** This is the Base Kerb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label located on the driver's door sill.

## Overloading

**⚠ WARNING**

**Vehicle weight**

The gross axle weight rating (GAWR) and the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the certification label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

# What to do in an emergency 6

**Road warning..... 6-3**
• Hazard warning flasher..... 6-3
**In case of an emergency whilst driving ..... 6-4**
• If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing..... 6-4
• If you have a flat tyre whilst driving..... 6-4
• If the engine stalls whilst driving..... 6-4
**If the engine will not start ..... 6-5**
• If the engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly ..... 6-5
• If engine turns over normally but does not start..... 6-5
**Emergency starting..... 6-6**
• Jump starting..... 6-6
• Push-starting..... 6-8
**If the engine overheats..... 6-8**
**Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)..... 6-10**
• Check tyre pressure..... 6-10
• Low tyre pressure telltale ..... 6-12
• Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction indicator ..... 6-13
• Tyre replacement with TPMS..... 6-14
**If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre)..... 6-16**
• Jack and tools..... 6-16
• Removing and storing the spare tyre..... 6-17
• Storing the spare tyre..... 6-17
• A flat tyre indoor storage..... 6-18
• Changing tyres..... 6-20
• Jack label..... 6-26
• EC Declaration of conformity Jack ..... 6-27

# 6 What to do in an emergency

**Towing.....6–28**
• Towing service.....6–28
• Removable towing hook.....6–29
• Emergency towing.....6–29
**Emergency commodity.....6–32**
• First aid kit.....6–32
• Triangle reflector.....6–32

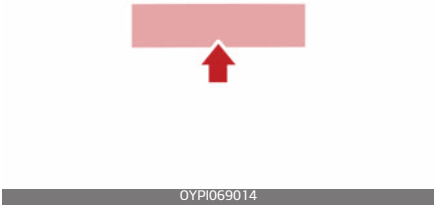
# WHAT TO DO IN AN EMERGENCY

## Road warning

When in an emergency situation occurs whilst driving or when you park by the edge of the roadway, you must alert approaching or passing vehicles to be careful as they pass. For this, you should use the hazard warning flasher.

### Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.



0YPI069014

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Depress the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the centre console switch panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- Care must be taken when using the hazard warning flasher whilst the vehicle is being towed.

## In case of an emergency whilst driving

If an emergency situation occurs whilst driving, stay calm and take the following steps.

### If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.

### If you have a flat tyre whilst driving

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving:

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down whilst driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control.
2. When the vehicle has slowed down to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road.
3. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on a firm level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
4. When the vehicle is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the transmission in P (Park).
5. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
6. When changing a flat tyre, follow the instruction provided later in "If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre)" on page 6-16.

### If the engine stalls whilst driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle does not start, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## If the engine will not start

When the engine doesn't start, first check to see how much fuel there is and whether the battery is discharged.

### If the engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

1. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
3. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
4. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
5. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump starting" on page 6-6.

**⚠ WARNING**

If the engine will not start, do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could result in a collision or cause other damage. In addition, push or pull starting may cause the catalytic converter to be overloaded and create a fire hazard.

### If engine turns over normally but does not start

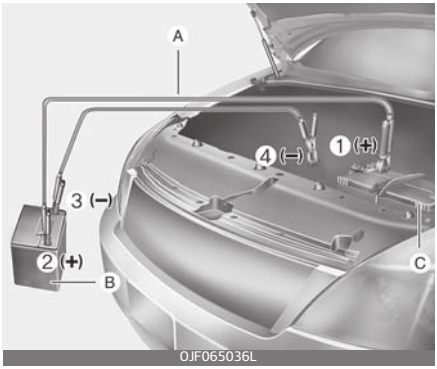
1. Check the fuel level.
2. With the ignition switch in the LOCK position, check all connectors at the ignition coils. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If the engine still does not start, call a professional workshop. Kia recommends to call an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Emergency starting

When the vehicle will not start because of low battery power, you may need to jump start the vehicle.

### Jump starting

Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.




(A): Jumper Cables

(B): Booster battery

(C): Discharged battery

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow the jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24 volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).

**⚠ WARNING**

**Battery**

Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode causing serious injury.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Battery**

- Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which may explode if exposed to flame or sparks.
  If these instructions are not followed exactly, serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur! If you are not sure how to follow this procedure, seek qualified assistance. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive. When jump starting, wear protective glasses and be careful

not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the vehicle.
- Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low; the battery may rupture or explode.
- Do not allow the (+) and (–) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.
- The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.

### *Jump starting procedure*

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
   If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles come in contact.
2. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
3. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration.
   First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (1), then connect the other end to the positive terminal on the booster battery (2).
   Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (4). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.
   Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Battery cables**

Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. This can cause the discharged battery to overheat and crack, releasing battery acid.

Make sure to connect one end of the jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery, and the other end to a metalic point, far away from the battery.

4. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
   If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, have the system checked by a professional workshop.
   Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Push-starting

Vehicles equipped with Automatic Transmission cannot be push-started. Follow the directions in this section for "Jump starting" on page 6-6.

**⚠ WARNING**

Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.

## If the engine overheats

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you will experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine is probably too hot.

If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (Park) and set the parking brake.
3. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
4. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from the bonnet, stop the engine. Do not open the bonnet until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped.
5. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating.
   If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
6. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing.
   1) If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight.
   2) If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

**⚠ WARNING**

Whilst the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.

7. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and call the nearest authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This can allow coolant to blow out of the opening and cause serious burns.

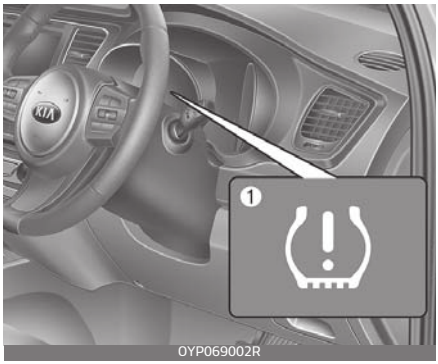
8. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. If coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
9. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, call an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ CAUTION**

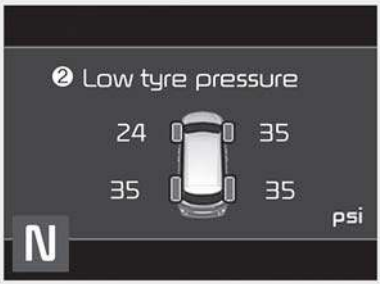
- Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (if equipped)

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) detects the pressure of vehicle's tyres and displays it on the LCD display.



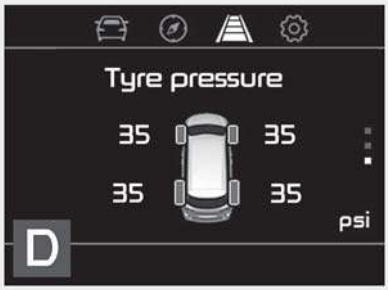

OYP069002R




OYPI069033

1. Low tyre pressure telltale / TPMS malfunction indicator
2. Low tyre pressure position telltale (Shown on the LCD display)

### Check tyre pressure




OYP048403R

- You can check the tyre pressure in the assist mode on the cluster.
  - Refer to "User settings mode" on page 4-73.
- Tyre pressure is displayed 1~2 minutes later after driving.
- If tyre pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, "Drive to display" message displays. After driving, check the tyre pressure.
- You can change the tyre pressure unit in the user settings mode on the cluster.
  - psi, kPa, bar (Refer to "User settings mode" on page 4-73).

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on

the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.



### * NOTICE

If any of the below happens, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

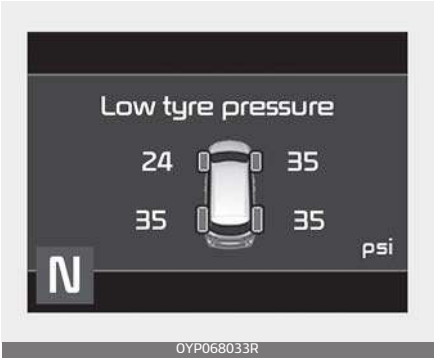
1. The low tyre pressure telltale/ TPMS malfunction indicator do not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to

the ON position or engine is running.
2. The TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.
3. The Low tyre pressure position telltale remains illuminated.

## Low tyre pressure telltale

### *Low tyre pressure position telltale*

When the tyre pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated and warning message displayed on the cluster LCD display, one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated.




OYP068033R

The low tyre pressure position telltale light will indicate which tyre is significantly under-inflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tyre inflation pressure label located on the driver's side centre pillar outer panel. If you cannot reach a service station or if the tyre cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tyre with a spare tyre.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 25 km/h after replacing the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre, one of the following will happen:

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel. (changed tyre equipped with a sensor not in the vehicle)
- The TPMS malfunction indicator will remain continuously illuminated whilst driving because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel. (changed tyre equipped with a sensor in the vehicle)

**⚠ CAUTION**

- In winter or cold weather, the low tyre pressure telltale may illuminate if the tyre pressure was adjusted to the recommended

tyre inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a lowering of tyre pressure.

- When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is higher or lower, you should check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust the tyres to the recommended tyre inflation pressure.
- When filling tyres with more air, conditions to turn off the low tyre pressure telltale may not be met. This is because a tyre inflator has a margin of error in performance. The low tyre pressure telltale will be turned off if the tyre pressure is above the recommended tyre inflation pressure.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Low pressure damage**

Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.

Continued driving on low pressure tyres can cause the tyres to overheat and fail.

### Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction indicator

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop to determine the cause of the problem. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**✻ NOTICE**

If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the low tyre pressure position telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle has an underinflated tyre.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radios transmitter such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation

of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if snow chains are used or some separate electronic devices such as notebook computer, mobile charger, remote starter or navigation etc., are used in the vehicle.
  This can interfere with normal operation of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

### Tyre replacement with TPMS

If you have a flat tyre, the low Tyre Pressure and Position telltales will come on.

In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ CAUTION**

We recommend that you use the sealant approved by Kia.

The sealant on the tyre pressure sensor and wheel shall be eleminated when you replace the tyre with a new one.

Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. Have your tyres serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 25 km/h after replacing the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre, one of the following will happen:
- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel. (changed tyre equipped with a sensor not in the vehicle)
- The TPMS malfunction indicator will remain continuously illuminated whilst driving because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel. (changed tyre equipped with a sensor in the vehicle)

You may not be able to identify a low tyre by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to measure the tyre's inflation pressure. Please note that a tyre that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tyre that is cold (from sitting stationary for at least 3 hours and driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile) during that 3 hour period).

Allow the tyre to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tyre is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km (1 mile) in that 3 hour period.

**⚠ CAUTION**

We recommend that you use the sealant approved by Kia if your vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. The liquid sealant can damage the tyre pressure sensors.

**⚠ WARNING**

**TPMS**

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.
- If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

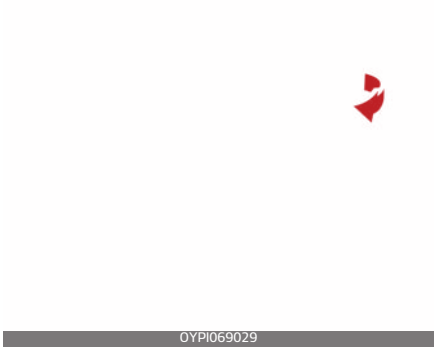
**⚠ WARNING**

**Protecting TPMS**

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tyre pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.

# If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre)

## Jack and tools



OYPI069029

The jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment.

Pull up the luggage box cover to reach this equipment.
1. Jack handle
2. Jack
3. Wheel lug nut wrench

### *Jacking instructions*

The jack is provided for emergency tyre changing only.

To prevent the jack from "rattling" whilst the vehicle is in motion, store it properly.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Changing tyres**

- Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.
- Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tyre. The jack should be used on level firm ground. If you cannot find a firm, level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.
- Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.
- The vehicle can easily roll off the jack causing serious injury or death.
- Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the engine whilst the vehicle is on the jack.
- Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle whilst it is on the jack.
- Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.

## Removing and storing the spare tyre

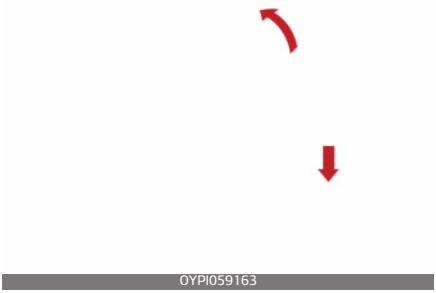


OYPI059167

Your spare tyre is stored underneath your vehicle, directly below the right sliding door.

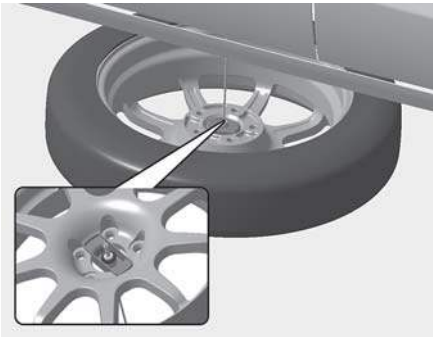
To remove the spare tyre:

1. Open the right sliding door and find the plastic hex bolt cover on the floor.
2. Remove the cover.



OYPI059163

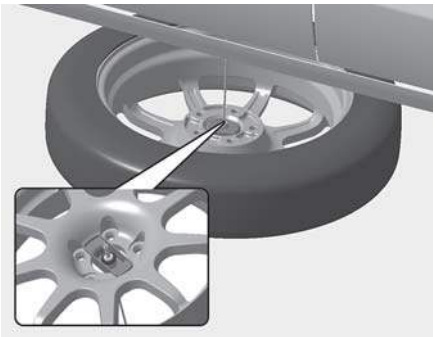
3. Use the tool to loosen the bolt enough to lower the spare tyre. Turn the tool counterclockwise until the spare tyre reaches the ground.



OYPI069046

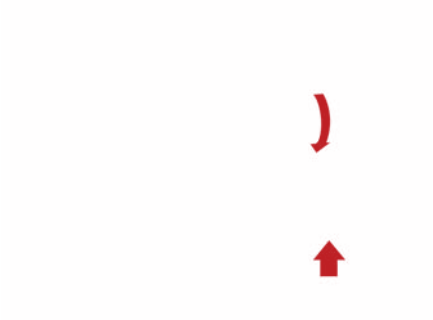
4. After the spare tyre reaches the ground, continue to turn the tool counterclockwise, and draw the spare tyre outside. Never rotate the tool excessively, otherwise the spare tyre carrier may be damaged.
5. Remove the retainer from the centre of the spare tyre.

## Storing the spare tyre



OYPI069046

1. Lay the tyre on the ground with the valve stem facing down.



OYPI059166

2. Place the wheel under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel centre.
3. Turn the tool clockwise until it clicks.

Ensure the spare tyre retainer is properly aligned with the centre of the spare tyre to prevent the spare tyre from "rattling".

Otherwise, it may cause the spare tyre to fall off the carrier and lead to an accident.

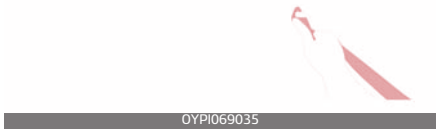
## A flat tyre indoor storage

### *In the 3rd row seats unfolded upright*

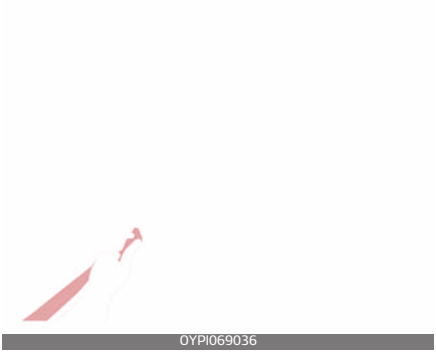


OYPI069034

1. With the flat tyres in the centre of the third row seats, place the outer part of the wheel facing the tailgate.
2. Pass the fixing belt through the inside of the wheel.



OYPI069035

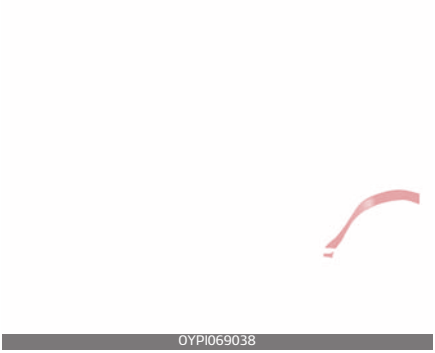

OYPI069036

3. Connect the fixing belt to the striker (A) located at the bottom left/right side of the back of the third row seats.
4. Tighten the fixing belt securely.

### *In the 3rd row seats folded flat*


OYPI069037

1. Place the flat tyre with its outer part facing upwards in the middle of the three-row seats.
2. Pass the fixing belt through the inside of the wheel.


OYPI069038


OYPI069039

3. Connect the fixing belt to the striker (A) located at the bottom left/right side of the back of the third row seats.
4. Tighten the fixing belt securely.

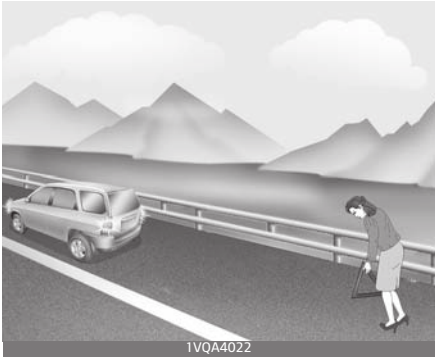


OYP068042L

- If the flat tyre is contaminated, cover the tyre with anti-pollution cover (B) before keeping it indoors. This is to prevent indoor contamination.

### Changing tyres

1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.


1VQA4022

2. Move the shift lever into P (Park) with automatic transmission.
3. Activate the hazard warning flasher.
4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tyre from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of wheel that is diagonally opposite the jack position.


0YPI069044

**⚠ WARNING**

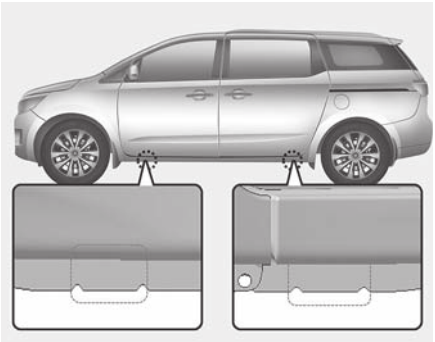
**Changing a tyre**

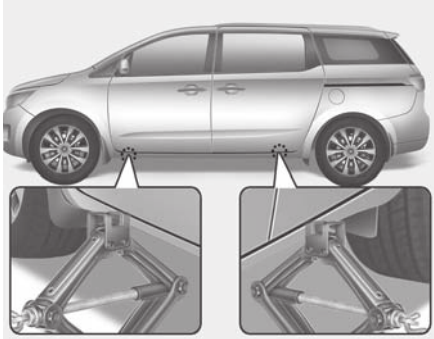
- To prevent vehicle movement whilst changing a tyre, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.
- We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tyre has been raised off the ground.


OYPI069028

7. Place the jack at the front (1) or rear (2) jacking position closest to the tyre you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot to index with the jack.


OYP064023N


OYP064022N

## ⚠ WARNING

**Jack location**

To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle and in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.

8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tyre just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 30 mm (1.2 in). Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.



0YPI069021

9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tyre, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them.
   If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Then jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can be slid over the other studs.

**⚠ WARNING**

Wheels may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury. Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that interferes with the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub.

If there is, remove it. If there is not good contact on the mounting surface between the wheel and hub, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in loss of control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.

10. To reinstall the wheel, hold it on the studs, put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. Jiggle the tyre to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts as much as possible with your fingers again.
11. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the tool counterclockwise.



0YPI069031

Then position the tool as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the tool handle or use an extension pipe over the tool handle. Go around the wheel tightening every other nut until they are all tight. Then doublecheck each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, have the system checked by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**Wheel nut tightening torque:**

Aluminium alloy wheel: 11~13 kg·m (79~94 lb·ft)

If you have a tyre gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct.

Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tyre pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tyre. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.

After you have changed wheels, always secure the flat tyre in its place and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled – or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud or vice-versa will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.

Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels. If in doubt, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Wheel studs**

If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.

To prevent the jack, tool and spare tyre from rattling whilst the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Inadequate spare tyre pressure**

Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tyre. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to "Tyres and wheels" on page 8-5.

***Important – use of compact spare tyre***

Your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare tyre. This compact spare tyre takes up less space than a regular- size tyre. This tyre is smaller than a conventional tyre and is designed for temporary use only.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- You should drive carefully when the compact spare is in use. The compact spare should be replaced by the proper conventional tyre and rim at the first opportunity.
- The operation of this vehicle is not recommended with more than one compact spare tyre in use at the same time.

**⚠ WARNING**

The compact spare tyre is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle on this compact spare at the speed over 80 km/h (50 mph). The original tyre should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare possibly leading to personal injury or death.

The compact spare should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi).

**✻ NOTICE**

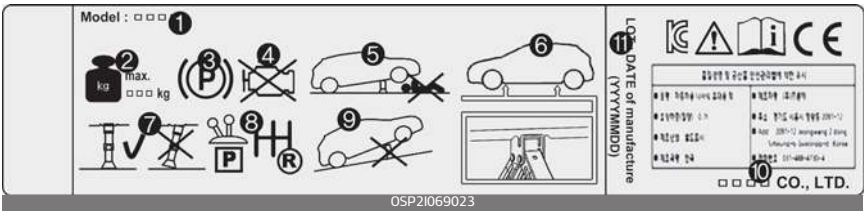
Check the inflation pressure after installing the spare tyre. Adjust it to the specified pressure, as necessary.

When using a compact spare tyre, observe the following precautions:

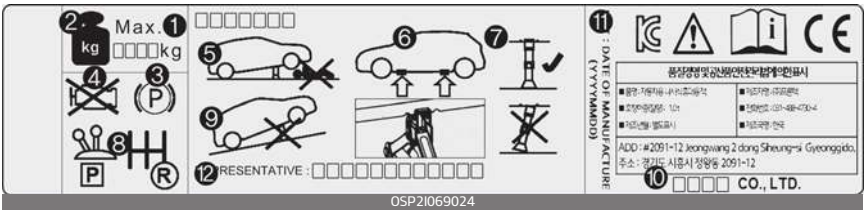
- Under no circumstances should you exceed 80 km/h (50 mph); a higher speed could damage the tyre.
- Ensure that you drive slowly enough to avoid all hazards. Any road hazard, such as a pothole or debris, could seriously damage the compact spare.
- Any continuous road use of this tyre could result in tyre failure, loss of vehicle control, and possible personal injury.
- Do not exceed the vehicle's maximum load rating or the load-carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tyre.
- Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tyre diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tyre and reduces the ground clearance approximately 2.5 cm (1 in), which could result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not take the vehicle through an automatic car wash whilst the compact spare tyre is installed.

- Do not use tyre chains on the temporary compact tyre. Because of the smaller size, a tyre chain will not fit properly. This could damage the vehicle and result in loss of the chain.
- Temporary compact tyre should not be installed on the front axle if the vehicle must be driven in snow or on ice.
- Do not use the temporary compact tyre on any other vehicle because this tyre has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The temporary compact tyre tread life is shorter than a regular tyre. Inspect your temporary compact tyre regularly and replace worn compact spare tyres with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- The temporary compact tyre should not be used on any other wheels, nor should standard tyres, snow tyres, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the temporary compact spare wheel. If such use is attempted, damage to these items or other car components may occur.
- Do not use more than one temporary compact tyre at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer whilst the temporary compact tyre is installed.

## Jack label




OSP2I069023




OSP2I069024

* The actual jack label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration. For more detailed specifications, refer to the label attached to the jack.

1. Model Name
2. Maximum allowable load
3. When using the jack, set your parking brake.
4. When using the jack, stop the engine.
5. Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
6. The designated locations under the frame
7. When supporting the vehicle, the base plate of jack must be vertical under the lifting point.
8. Move the shift lever to the P position on vehicles with automatic transmission.
9. The jack should be used on firm level ground.
10. Jack manufacturer
11. Production date
12. Representative company and address

## EC Declaration of conformity Jack



SATHYA AUTO PRIVATE LIMITED

Works / Regd. Office : Plant-1
No. 133, SIDCO Industrial Estate, Thirumazhisai, Chennai - 600 124. Ph : +91 44 26810211

CE

EC Declaration of Conformity

according to EC Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC

We, SATHYA AUTO PRIVATE LTD.

133, SIDCO INDUSTRIAL ESTATE, CHENNAI, PINCODE: 600124, TAMIL NADU, INDIA.

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

Product : JACK –ASSY

Type Designation(s) : 700KG, 600KG, 1000KG

Serial No. : N/A (prototype)

Year of Manufacture : 2013

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s) or other normative document(s):

EN ISO12100 (2010) Safety of machinery – General principles for design – Risk assessment and risk reduction

EN ISO12100-2/A1 (2009) Safety of Machinery – Basic concepts, general principles for design, Part2 : Technical principles

EN 1494/A1 (2008) Mobile or movable jacks and associated lifting equipment

Following the provisions of Directive(s):

2006/42/EC Directive on the approximation of the laws of Member States relating to machinery (OJ L157 Jun , 9, 2006)

Sathya Auto Private limited , Chennai, India / 21.6.2013 R.MOHAN, Managing Director

(Place and date of issue) (Name and signature or equivalent marking of authorised person)

- T.C.F Compiling Person, QS Zurich AG,
- P.O. Box 6335, CH-8050 Zurich

Works : Plant-II
No. 14, SIDCO Industrial Estate,
Thirumazhisai, Chennai - 600 124.
Ph : +91 44 26810212

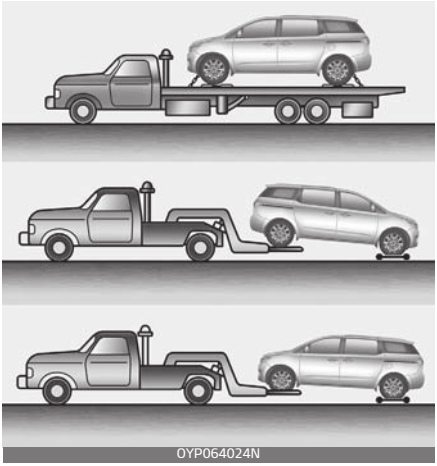
Works : Plant-III
S.No. 866/2, Village No. 126/230,
Hussain Nagar, Mappedu B Village,
Thiruvallur Taluk & Dist., Tamilnadu.

Telefax : +91 44 26810211/216 Website : www.sathyaauto.com E-mail : info@sathyaauto.com

OSP2I069021

# Towing

## Towing service


OYP064024N

1. dollies

If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies (1) or flatbed is recommended.

It is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the front wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the front wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the front of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the rear.


OYPI069026


OYPI049260

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Do not tow the vehicle backwards with the front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.
- Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.
- Do not tow the vehicle with four wheels in contact with the ground if it is the vehicle equipped with automatic transmission. Otherwise, the transmission will be seriously damaged. Also, make sure not to tow the vehicle connecting it with other vehicles including camper vans.

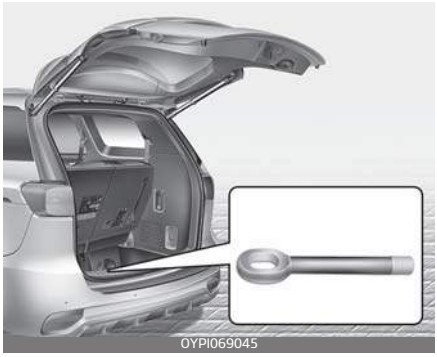
When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies:

1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Failure to place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transmission.

### Removable towing hook



OYPI069045



OYPI069009

1. Open the tailgate, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.
2. Remove the hole cover pressing the lower part of the cover on the bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

### Emergency towing



OYPI069010



OYPI069011

**If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service.**

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook under the front (or rear) of the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speed. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

- Do not use the tow hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Avoid towing a vehicle heavier than the vehicle doing the towing.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Attach a towing strap to the tow hook.
- Using a portion of the vehicle other than the tow hooks for towing may damage the body of your vehicle.
- Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing hook provided.

---

- Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle in a slow and gradual manner whilst maintaining tension on the tow rope or chain to start or drive the vehicle, otherwise tow hooks and the vehicle may be damaged.
- Before emergency towing, check if the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply it steadily and with even force.
- To avoid damaging the hook, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.

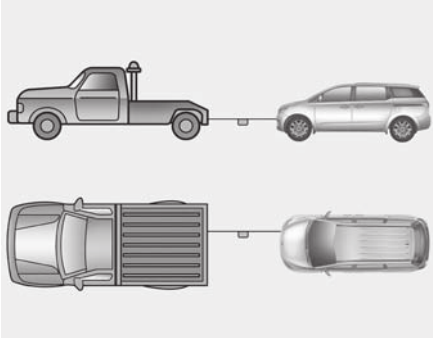
**⚠ WARNING**

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.

- Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and towing cable or chain. The hook and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.
- If the disabled vehicle is unable to be moved, do not forcibly continue the towing. We recommend that you contact an authorised

Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service for assistance.
- Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.
- Keep away from the vehicle during towing.

- Use a towing strap less than 5 m (16 feet) long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm (12 in) wide) in the middle of the strap for easy visibility.



OYP064025N

- Drive carefully so that the towing strap is not loosened during towing.
- The driver must be in the vehicle for steering and braking operations when the vehicle is towed and passengers other than the driver must not be allowed to be on board.

### *Emergency towing precautions*

- Turn the ignition switch to ACC so the steering wheel isn't locked.
- Place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking bake.
- Press the brake pedal with more force than normal since you will have reduced brake performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- If you are driving down a long hill, the brakes may overheat and brake performance will be reduced. Stop often and let the brakes cool off.

### ⚠ CAUTION

**Automatic transmission**

- If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transmission is in neutral. Be sure the steering is unlocked by placing the ignition switch in the ACC position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.
- To avoid serious damage to the automatic transmission, limit the vehicle speed to 15 km/h (10 mph) and drive less than 1.5 km (1 mile) when towing.
- Before towing, check the automatic transmission for fluid leaks under your vehicle. If the automatic transmission fluid is leaking, flatbed equipment or a towing dolly must be used.

## Emergency commodity (if equipped)

There are some emergency commodities in the vehicle to help you respond to the emergency situation.

### First aid kit

There are some items such as bandage and adhesive tape and etc. in the kit to give first aid to an injured person.

### Triangle reflector

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to any problems.

# Maintenance 7


**Engine compartment** ..... **7-5**
**Maintenance services** ..... **7-6**
**Owner maintenance** ..... **7-9**
**Scheduled maintenance service** ..... **7-11**
**Explanation of scheduled maintenance items** ..... **7-15**
**Engine oil** ..... **7-19**
• Checking the engine oil level ..... 7-19
• Changing the engine oil and filter ..... 7-20
**Engine coolant** ..... **7-20**
• Checking the coolant level ..... 7-21
• Changing the coolant ..... 7-22
**Brake fluid** ..... **7-23**
• Checking the brake fluid level ..... 7-23
**Power steering fluid** ..... **7-24**
• Checking the power steering fluid level ..... 7-24
• Checking the power steering hose ..... 7-25
**Washer fluid** ..... **7-25**
• Checking the washer fluid level ..... 7-25
**Parking brake** ..... **7-26**
• Checking the parking brake ..... 7-26
**Fuel filter** ..... **7-27**
• Draining water from the fuel filter ..... 7-27
• Fuel filter cartridge replacement ..... 7-27
**Air cleaner filter** ..... **7-28**
• Replacing air cleaner filter ..... 7-28
**Climate control air filter** ..... **7-29**

# 7 Maintenance


• Inspecting and replacing climate control air filter ..... 7-29
**Wiper blades ..... 7-31**
• Blade inspection ..... 7-31
• Blade replacement ..... 7-31
**Battery ..... 7-33**
• For best battery service ..... 7-33
• Battery capacity label ..... 7-34
• Battery recharging ..... 7-34
• Reset items ..... 7-35
**Tyres and wheels ..... 7-36**
• Checking tyre inflation pressure ..... 7-37
• Tyre rotation ..... 7-38
• Wheel alignment and tyre balance ..... 7-39
• Tyre replacement ..... 7-39
• Compact spare tyre replacement ..... 7-41
• Wheel replacement ..... 7-41
• Tyre traction ..... 7-41
• Tyre maintenance ..... 7-41
• Tyre sidewall labeling ..... 7-42
**Fuses ..... 7-45**
• Inner panel fuse replacement ..... 7-47
• Engine compartment fuse replacement ..... 7-49
• Fuse/relay panel description ..... 7-51
**Light bulbs ..... 7-59**
• Bulb replacement precaution ..... 7-59
• Light bulb position (Front) ..... 7-61
• Light bulb position (Rear) ..... 7-61
• Light bulb position (Side) ..... 7-62

# Maintenance 7


- Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A) ..... 7-62
- Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A) ..... 7-63
- Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A) ..... 7-64
- Position lamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type A) ..... 7-65
- Headlamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type B) 7-65
- Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement (Headlamp Type B) ..... 7-66
- Side repeater lamp (LED type) bulb replacement..... 7-66
- Front fog lamp bulb replacement..... 7-67
- Stop and tail lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A) ..... 7-67
- Rear turn signal lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A) ..... 7-68
- Tail lamp (inside) (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A) ..... 7-69
- Back-up lamp bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A) ..... 7-70
- Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type B) ..... 7-70
- Rear turn signal lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type B) ..... 7-71
- Back-up lamp bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type B) ..... 7-72
- High mounted stop lamp (LED type) bulb replacement 7-72
- License plate lamp bulb replacement ..... 7-73
- Map lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement ..... 7-73

# 7 Maintenance


• Replacing map lamp (LED type) bulb ..... 7-74
• Room lamp bulb replacement ..... 7-74
• Replacing room lamp (LED type) bulb..... 7-75
• Glove box lamp replacement ..... 7-75
• Luggage lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement..... 7-76
• Vanity mirror lamp (LED type) bulb replacement..... 7-76
• Replacing personal lamp (LED Type) bulb ..... 7-77

**Appearance care ..... 7-77**

• Exterior care..... 7-77
• Interior care ..... 7-83

**Emission control system ..... 7-85**

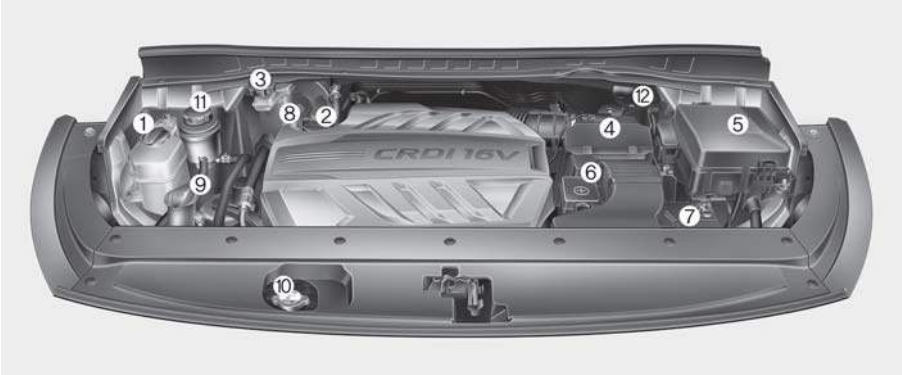
• Lean NOx Trap..... 7-88
• Selective Catalytic Reduction ..... 7-88

# MAINTENANCE

## Engine compartment

Open the bonnet to see the engine compartment.

Diesel Engine (R2.2)




OYP078002R

* The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Positive battery terminal
7. Negative battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
10. Radiator cap
11. Power steering reservoir (if equipped)
12. Fuel filter

## Maintenance services

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Should you have any doubts concerning the inspection or servicing of your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you have an authorised Kia dealer perform this work.

An authorised Kia dealer has factory-trained technicians and genuine Kia parts to service your vehicle properly. For expert advice and quality service, see an authorised Kia dealer.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

### Owner's responsibility

**NOTICE**

Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in the Kia Warranty Policy section at the end of this manual.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Authorised Kia dealers meet Kia's high service quality standards and receive technical support from Kia in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

### Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

As explained earlier in this section, several procedures can be done only by an authorised Kia dealer with special tools.

## ✻ NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may effect warranty coverage. For details read the Kia Warranty Policy section at the end of this manual. If you're unsure about any servicing & maintenance procedure, we recommend that the system be serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner

## ⚠ WARNING

### Maintenance work

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. You can be seriously injured whilst performing some maintenance procedures. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Working under the bonnet with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewelry or loose clothing. These can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury. Therefore, if you must run the engine whilst working under the bonnet, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.

### Engine compartment precautions

The piezo injector operates at high voltage (maximum 200 V). Therefore, the following accidents may occur.

- Direct contact with the injector or injector wiring may cause electric shock or damage your muscle or nerve system.
- The electromagnetic wave from the operating injector may cause the artificial heart pacemaker to malfunction.

Follow the safety tips provided below, when you are checking the engine room whilst the engine is running.

- Do not touch the injector, injector wirings, and the engine computer whilst the engine is running.
- Do not remove the injector connector whilst the engine is running.
- People using pacemakers must not go near the engine whilst the engine is starting or running.

## ⚠ WARNING

**Diesel Engine**

Never work on the injection system with the engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off the engine. High-pressure pump, rail, injectors and highpressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stopped. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touches the body. People using pacemakers should not move more than 30 cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room whilst the engine is running, since the high currents in the electronic engine control system produce considerable magnetic fields.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- Do not put heavy objects or apply excessive force on top of the engine cover or fuel related parts.
- When you inspect the fuel system (fuel lines and fuel injection devices), contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Do not drive long time with the engine cover removed.
- When checking the engine room, do not go near fire.
  Fuel, washer fluid, etc. are flammable oils that may cause fire.
- Before touching the battery, ignition cables and electrical wiring, you should disconnect the battery "-" terminal. You may get an electric shock from the electric current.
- When you remove the interior trim cover with a flat bed (-) driver, be careful not to damage the cover.
- Be careful when you replace and clean bulbs to avoid burns or electrical shock.

## Owner maintenance

The following lists detail the vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorised Kia dealer. They should be performed at the indicated frequencies to help ensure the safe and dependable operation of your vehicle.

If you have any question, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

These owner maintenance checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts and lubricants used.

**When you stop for fuel:**

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level in coolant reservoir.
- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tyres. Check if the front of the radiator and condenser are clean and not blocked with leaves, dirt or insects etc. If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, we recommend that you contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Hot coolant**

Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure.

**Whilst operating your vehicle:**

- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or "pulls" to one side when travelling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or "hard-to-push" brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transmission occurs, check the transmission fluid level.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

**At least monthly:**

- Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare for tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Check for loose wheel lug nuts.

**At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall):**

- Check the radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check the windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean the wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check the headlight alignment.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.
- Check the muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check for worn tyres and loose wheel lug nuts.

**At least once a year:**

- Clean the body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate the door hinges and check the bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate the door and bonnet locks and latches.
- Lubricate the door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate the automatic transmission linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.
- Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear.

## Scheduled maintenance service

Follow the Normal maintenance schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply.

Follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions if any of the following conditions apply.

- Repeated driving short distance of less than 8 km in normal temperature or less than 16 km in freezing temperature.
- Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, gravelled or salt-spread roads.
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather.
- Driving in heavy dust condition.
- Driving in heavy traffic area.
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly.
- Towing a trailer , a camper, or storing cargo on roof rack.
- Vehicle towing, driving for patrol car, taxi, or other commercial use.
- Driving over 170 km/h.
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go condition.

If your vehicle is operated in any of the prior listed conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently, using the severe usage maintenance schedule instead of the normal usage maintenance schedule.

## Normal maintenance schedule

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

| NO. | ITEM | REMARK |
|---|---|---|
| *1 | Engine oil and engine oil filter | Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip. |
| *2 | Engine oil and engine oil filter | • The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty.<br>• This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced according to the severe maintenance schedule. |
| *3 | Coolant (Engine) | When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage. |
| *4 | Drive belts (Engine) | • Adjust alternator, water pump and air conditioner drive belt. Inspect and if necessary repair or replace.<br>• Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace. |
| *5 | Valve clearance | Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. |
| *6 | Fuel filter cartridge | This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consult a professional workshop for more details. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. |

## Normal Maintenance Schedule

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R: Replace or change

| Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Months | 1 | 6 | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 |
| Km X 1,000 | 1 | 5 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 |
| Engine oil and engine oil filter*1*2 \| R 2.2 L | I | I | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| Coolant (Engine)*3 | At first, Replace 100,000 km or 60 months after that, Replace every 20,000 km or 24 months | | | | | | | | | |
| Drive belts (Engine)*4 | – | – | – | – | – | I | – | I | – | I |
| Valve clearance*5 | – | – | – | – | – | – | – | I | – | – |
| Vacuum hoses and crankcase ventilation hoses | – | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Automatic transmission fluid (if equipped) | – | – | – | – | I | – | – | I | – | – |
| Drive shaft and boots | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Fuel lines, hoses and connections | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Fuel filler cap | – | – | – | – | – | I | – | – | – | I |
| Urea line & connections (if equipped) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Urea solution filler cap (if equipped) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Fuel filter cartridge*6 | – | – | – | I | – | R | – | I | – | R |
| Air cleaner filter | – | – | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| Exhaust system | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Cooling system | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant (if equipped) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Climate control air filter (if equipped) | – | I | I | R | I | R | I | R | I | R |
| Brake discs and pads | – | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Brake lines, hoses and connections | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Brake fluid | I | I | I | I | R | I | I | R | I | I |
| Parking brake (Foot type) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Power steering fluid (if equipped) | – | – | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Power steering pump, belt and hoses (if equipped) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Suspension ball joints | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Tire (pressure & tread wear) | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Battery condition | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Wheel alignment & balancing | – | – | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Check all electrical systems & alternator | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |

(Continued)

| Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Months | 1 | 6 | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84 | 96 |
| Km X 1,000 | 1 | 5 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 |
| Warning lights operation & KDS system check | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I | I |
| Road test | Inspect if required | | | | | | | | | |

*** NOTICE**

Monitor urea level regularly and maitain adequate quantity to ensure smooth running of vehicle and avoid stoppage. For more details refer to "Selective Catalytic Reduction" topic on page 7-88.

## Severe Usage Maintenance Schedule

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R: Replace or change

| Maintenance item | Maintenance operation | Maintenance Intervals | Maintenance intervals Driving condition |
|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil and engine oil filter R 2.2L | R | Every 5,000 km or 6 months | A, B, C, F, G, H, I, J, K, L |
| Automatic transmission fluid | R | Every 90,000 km | A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J |
| Drive shaft and boots | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J |
| Air cleaner filter | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E |
| Climate control air filter | R | Replace more frequently depending on the condition | C, E, G |
| Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, G, H |
| Parking brake (Foot Type) | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, G, H |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G |
| Suspension ball joints | I | Inspect more frequently depending on the condition | C, D, E, F, G |

Severe Driving Conditions

A: Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature.
B: Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.
C: Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, gravelled or saltspread roads.
D: Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E: Driving in heavy dust condition.
F: Driving in heavy traffic area.
G: Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly.
H: Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack.
I: Driving for patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing.
J: Driving in very cold weather
K: Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/ h).
L: Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

### Severe Driving Conditions

A: Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature.
B: Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.
C: Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, gravelled or saltspread roads.
D: Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E: Driving in heavy dust condition.
F: Driving in heavy traffic area.
G: Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly.
H: Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack.
I: Driving for patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing.
J: Driving in very cold weather
K: Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h).
L: Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

## Explanation of scheduled maintenance items

The following parts require scheduled maintenance.

### Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

### Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

**⚠ CAUTION**

When you are inspecting the belt, place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF or ACC position.

### Fuel filter cartridge

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. We recommend that the fuel filter be replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. We recommend that the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections be replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Diesel only**

Never work on the injection system with the engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off the engine. High pressure pump, rail, injectors and high pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stops. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touches the body. People wearing a cardiac pacemaker should maintain a distance of at least 30 cm from the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room whilst the engine is running, since the high currents in the Common Rail system produce considerable magnetic fields.

### Vapour hose and fuel filler cap

The vapour hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapour hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

### Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses (if equipped)

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold. Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving components which

might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

### Air cleaner filter

We recommend that the air cleaner filter be replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Cooling system

Check the cooling system components, such as the radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

### Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

### Automatic transmission fluid

Automatic transmission fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions. Have the automatic transmission fluid changed by a professional workshop according to the maintenance schedule. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**NOTICE**

Automatic transmission fluid colour is basically red.

As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transmission fluid will begin to look darker. It is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed colour.

**CAUTION**

The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transmission malfunction and failure.

Use only specified automatic transmission fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" on page 8-6.)

### Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

### Brake fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between "MIN" and "MAX" marks on the side of the reservoir.

Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

**Parking brake**

Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake pedal and cables.

**Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors**

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, we recommend to consult a authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**Suspension mounting bolts**

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/servce partner for maintenance.

**Steering gear box, linkage & boots/ lower arm ball joint**

With the vehicle stopped and off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/servce partner for maintenance.

**Drive shafts and boots**

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

**Air conditioning refrigerant**

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

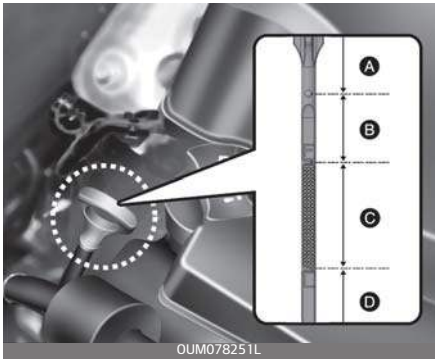
**Power steering pump, belt and hoses**

Check the power steering pump and hoses for leakage and damage.

Replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately. Inspect the power steering belt (or drive belt) for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear, oiliness and proper tension. Replace or adjust it if necessary.

# Engine oil

## Checking the engine oil level




1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Radiator hose**

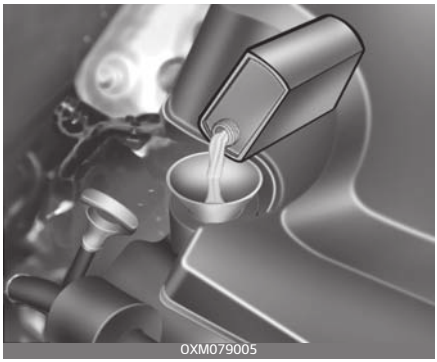
Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.

5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level.
6. The level should be in the C range. If the level is in the D range, add enough engine oil to bring the level up to the C range.

| Figure | Required action according to the respective engine oil level |
|---|---|
| Range (A) | Contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. |
| Range (B) | Do not refill oil. |
| Range (C) | Normal.<br>You may add oil as long as the oil level does not go above C-range. |
| Range (D) | You must add oil and make sure that the oil level is in the C-Range. |

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Do not spill engine oil, when adding or changing engine oil. If you drop the engine oil on the engine room, wipe it off immediately.
- When you wipe the oil level gauge, you should wipe it with a clean cloth. When mixed with debris, it can cause engine damage.




If it is near or at L (Low), add enough oil to bring the level to F (Full). **Do not overfill.**

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" on page 8-6.)

### Changing the engine oil and filter

Have the engine oil and filter replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

Used engine oil may cause skin irritation or cancer if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.

## Engine coolant

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before travelling to a colder climate.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Radiator/Inverter cap**

Never attempt to remove the radiator or inverter cap whilst the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage and could result in serious bodily injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.

### Recommended coolant

When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or damage.

- Do not use alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.

- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.
- The cooling circuit of a vehicle equipped with a heat pump system may freeze in extremely low temperature when the concentration of the antifreezing liquid is below 45%.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

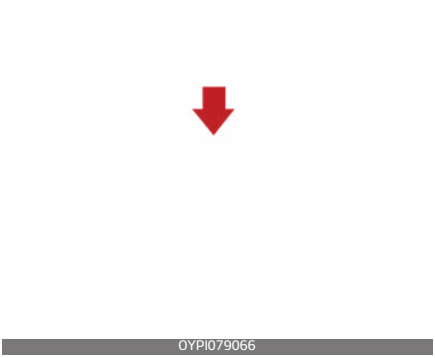
| Ambient Temperature | Mixture Percentage (volume) | |
|---|---|---|
| | Antifreeze | Water |
| -15 °C | 35 | 65 |
| -25 °C | 40 | 60 |
| -35 °C | 50 | 50 |
| -45 °C | 60 | 40 |

**⚠ WARNING**



**Radiator cap**

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure which may result in serious injury.




### Checking the coolant level

**⚠ WARNING**



**Removing radiator cap**

Never attempt to remove the radiator cap whilst the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system damage and could result in serious personal injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.

1. Turn the vehicle off and wait until it cools down.
2. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop.
3. Step back whilst the pressure is released from the cooling system.
4. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick

towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Cooling fan**

Use caution when working near the blade of the cooling fan. The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. it may sometimes operate even when the vehicle is not running.

5. Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses.
6. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.
7. Check the coolant level. The coolant level should be filled between F and L marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine room is cool.



OYPI079046

8. If the coolant level is low, add enough specified coolant to provide protection against freezing and corrosion. Bring the level to F, but do not overfill.

If frequent additions are required, we recommend that the system be inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Changing the coolant

We recommend that the coolant be replaced by an authorised Kia dealer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this chapter.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Put a thick cloth or fabric around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as the alternator.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Coolant**

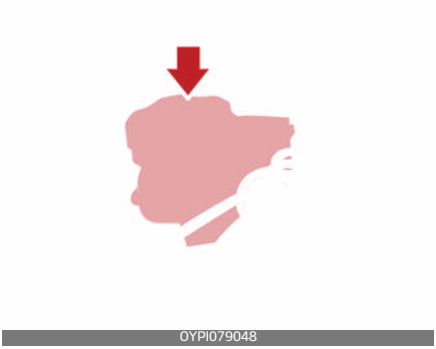
- Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.
- Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.

## Brake fluid

The brake fluid acts to transmit force to the brake when the driver depresses the brake pedal. Brake fluid must be maintained periodically to ensure that the brakes operate smoothly.

### Checking the brake fluid level

Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.



OYPI079048

1. Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.
2. If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings. If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Use only the specified brake fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" on page 8-6.)

Never mix different types of fluid.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Loss of brake fluid**

In the event the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid, we recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Brake fluid**

When changing and adding brake fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**Brake fluid**

Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.

The brake fluid constantly absorbs moisture from the air. This lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid. If the boiling point is too low, vapour pockets may form in the brake system when the brakes are applied hard.

Brake fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly.

# Power steering fluid

### Checking the power steering fluid level



0YPI079063

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level in the power steering reservoir periodically. The fluid should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the gauge at the normal temperature.

Before adding power steering fluid, thoroughly clean the area around the reservoir cap to prevent power steering fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level.

## ✻ NOTICE

"HOT" range on the gauge. If the fluid is cold, check that it is in the "COLD" range.

In the event the power steering system requires frequent addition of fluid, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- To avoid damage to the power steering pump, do not operate the vehicle for prolonged periods with a low power steering fluid level.
- Never start the engine when the reservoir tank is empty.
- When adding fluid, be careful that dirt does not get into the tank.
- Too little fluid can result in increased steering effort and/or noise from the power steering system.
- The use of the non-specified fluid could reduce the effectiveness of the power steering system and cause damage to it.

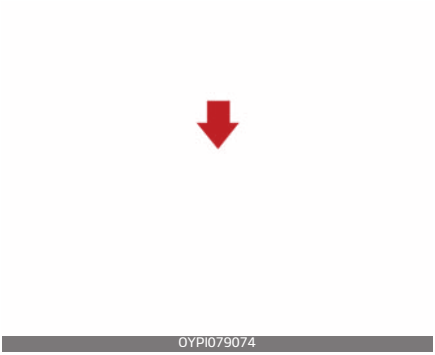
### Checking the power steering hose

Check the connections for oil leaks, damage and twists in the power steering hose before driving.

## Washer fluid

Washer fluid is used when wiping the windscreen of the vehicle with a windscreen wiper. You should check and refill washer fluid periodically to make sure that it doesn't run out.

### Checking the washer fluid level



OYPI079074

The reservoir is translucent so that you can check the level with a quick visual inspection.

- Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

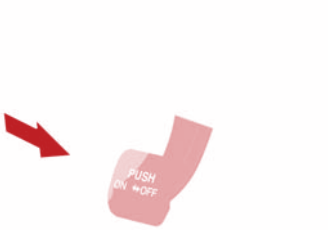
**⚠ WARNING**

**Coolant**

- Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.
- Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.
- Windscreen Washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or occupants could occur.
- Windscreen washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windscreen washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.

## Parking brake (if equipped)

### Checking the parking brake




0YPI059009

Check whether the stroke is within specification when the parking brake pedal is depressed with 20 kgf (44 lb, 196N) of force. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**Stroke: 4~5 notch**

# Fuel filter

## Draining water from the fuel filter

The fuel filter for diesel engine plays an important role of separating water from fuel and accumulating the water in its bottom.

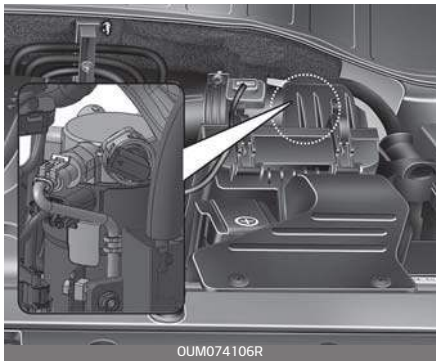
If water accumulates in the fuel filter, the warning light comes on when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

If this warning light illuminates, take your car to a professional workshop and have drain the water and check the system. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If the water accumulated in the fuel filter is not drained at proper times, damages to the major parts such as the fuel system can be caused by water permeation in the fuel filter.

## Fuel filter cartridge replacement




**✻ NOTICE**

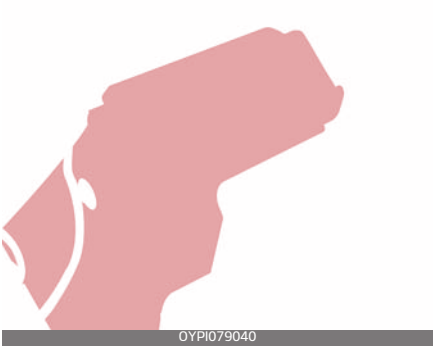
When replacing the fuel filter cartridge, use parts for replacement from a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Air cleaner filter

A Genuine Kia air cleaner filter is recommended when the filter is replaced.

### Replacing air cleaner filter

Air cleaner filter must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.



OYPI079040

You can clean the filter when inspecting the air cleaner compartment. Clean the filter by using compressed air.

1. Lift up and open the air cleaner cover (1).



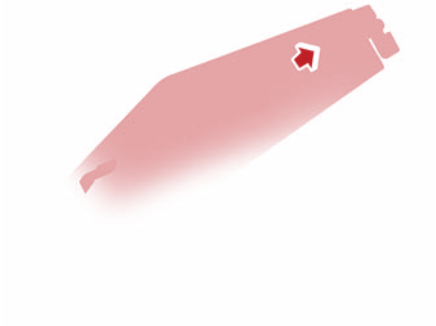
OYPI079041

2. Rotate the locking lever (2) downward.



OYPI079042

3. Wipe the inside of the air cleaner box. Be careful dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.
4. Replace the air cleaner filter.



OYPI079043

5. Lock the cover with the cover attaching clips.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**Air filter maintenance**

- Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.
- When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.
- Use a Kia genuine part. Use of a non-genuine part could damage the air flow sensor.
  We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer

## Climate control air filter

The climate control air filter should be replaced according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier.

### Inspecting and replacing climate control air filter

When you replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure. Be careful to avoid damaging other components.

1. Open the glove box and remove the support strap (1).



OYPI079006

2. With the glove box open, remove the stoppers on both sides.



OYPI079005

3. Remove the climate control air filter cover by pulling out right side of the cover.



OYPI079007

4. Replace the climate control air filter.



OBDC079143RE

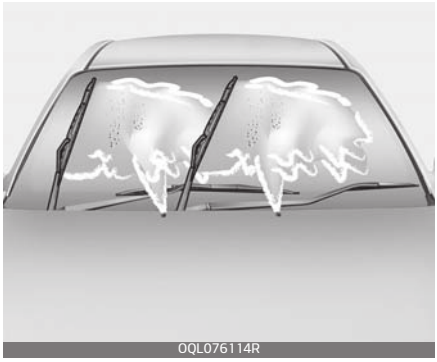
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.

## Wiper blades

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

### Blade inspection


OQL076114R

**NOTICE**

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windscreen difficult to clean.

Contamination of either the windscreen or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

**CAUTION**

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.

### Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

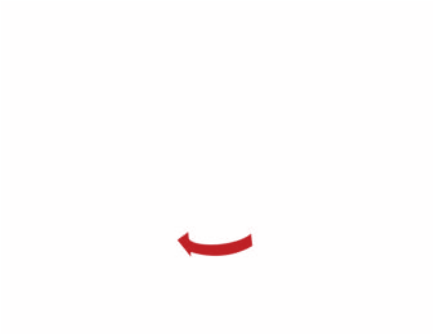
**CAUTION**

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

**CAUTION**

The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.

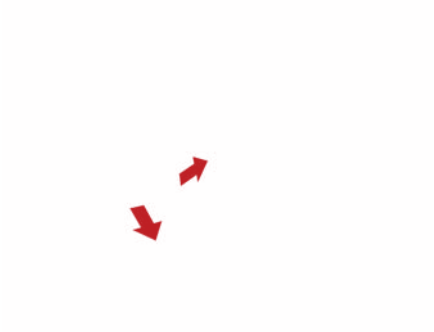
***Front windscreen wiper blade***


OYPI079151

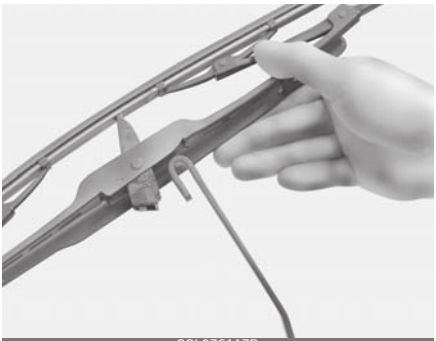
1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windscreen, since it may chip or crack the windscreen.



OYPI079152

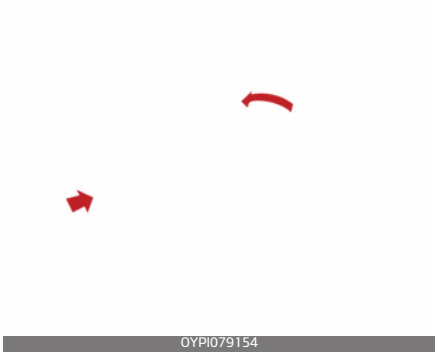


OQL076117R

2. Compress the clip (1) and slide the blade assembly downward (2).
3. Lift it off the arm.
4. Install the blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.

***Rear window wiper blade***

1. Raise the wiper arm and pull out the wiper blade assembly.



OYPI079154

2. Install the new blade assembly by inserting the centre part into the slot in the wiper arm until it clicks into place.



OYPI079155

3. Make sure the blade assembly is installed firmly by trying to pull it slightly.

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, have the wiper blade replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Battery

The battery powers the engine in order to move the vehicle as well as supplying power to the various devices installed in the vehicle.

### For best battery service



0YPI079064

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

**✻ NOTICE**

Basically equipped battery is maintenance free type. If your vehicle is equipped with the battery marked with LOWER and UPPER on the side, you can check the electrolyte level. The electrolyte level should be between LOWER and UPPER. If the electrolyte level is low, it needs to add distilled (demineralised) water (Never add sulfuric acid or other electrolyte). When refill, be careful not to splash the battery and adjacent components. And do not overfill the battery cells. It can cause corrosion on other parts. After then ensure that tighten the cell caps. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Battery dangers**



Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Keep lighted cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.



Hydrogen, a highly combustible gas, is always present in battery cells and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.



If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes

with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel a pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.



Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.




The battery contains lead. Do not dispose of it after use. Please return the battery to an authorised Kia dealer to be recycled.

- When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak, resulting in personal injury. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.
- Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.
- The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Failure to follow the above warnings can result in serious bodily injury or death.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If you use unauthorised electronic devices, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorised devices.

### Battery capacity label

example




* The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. AGM90L-DIN: The Kia model name of battery
2. 80Ah(20HR): The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
3. 170RC: The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
4. 12V: The nominal voltage
5. 850CCA(SAE): The cold-test current in amperes by SAE
6. 680A: The cold-test current in amperes by EN

### Battery recharging

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on whilst the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load whilst the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20~30 A for two hours.

**⚠ WARNING**

When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:

- The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.
- Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.
- Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate in following cases:
  1. the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently
  2. the electrolyte temperature of any cell exceeds 49 °C.
- Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.
- Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.
  1. Turn off the battery charger main switch.
  2. Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.
  3. Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.
- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the vehicle.
- The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.

### Reset items

The following items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window (Refer to "Window opening and closing" on page 4-45)
- Sunroof (Refer to "Sunroof (if equipped)" on page 4-54.)
- Trip computer (Refer to "Trip information (trip computer)" on page 4-77)
- Climate control system (Refer to "Automatic climate control system" on page 4-122)
- Clock (Refer to "Clock" on page 4-149.)
- Audio (Refer to "Audio system" on page 4-154.)

# Tyres and wheels

## Tyre care

For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

### Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

All tyre pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tyres are cold. "Cold Tyres" means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (one mile).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, top vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.

For recommended inflation pressure, refer to "Tyres and wheels" on page 8-5.



OYPI089005

All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Tyre underinflation**

Severe underinflation (70 kPa (10 psi) or more) can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tyre failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control leading to severe injury or death. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Underinflation also results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation also is possible. Keep your tyre pressures at the proper levels. If a tyre frequently needs refilling, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Overinflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the centre of the tyre tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Warm tyres normally exceed recommended cold tyre pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure or the tyres will be underinflated.
- Be sure to reinstall the tyre inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Tyre Inflation**

Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Tyre pressure Always observe the following:**

- Check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than 1.6 km (one mile) since startup.)
- Check the pressure of your spare tyre each time you check the pressure of other tyres.
- Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.
- Worn, old tyres can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tyres have been damaged, replace them.

### Checking tyre inflation pressure

Check your tyres once a month or more.

Also, check the tyre pressure of the spare tyre.

#### *How to check*

Use a good quality gauge to check tyre pressure. You can not tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Check the tyre's inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. – "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the rec-

ommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Inspect your tyres frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tyre pressure gauge.
- Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death.
- The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar.
- Worn tyres can cause accidents. Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Remember to check the pressure of your spare tyre. Kia recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tyres on your vehicle.

### Tyre rotation

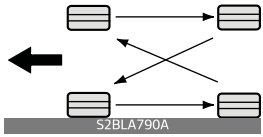
To equalise tread wear, it is recommended that the tyres be rotated every 10,000 km or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

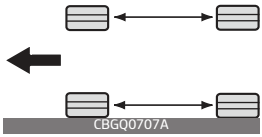
When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tyre. Replace the tyre if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.

Refer to "Tyres and wheels" on page 8-5.

Without a spare tyre



Directional tyres (if equipped)




Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.

Rotate radial tyres that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.

**NOTICE**

Rotate radial tyres that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.

**WARNING**

- Do not use the compact spare tyre (if equipped) for tyre rotation.
- Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that could result in death, severe injury, or property damage.

### Wheel alignment and tyre balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tyre life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

**CAUTION**

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminium wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.

### Tyre replacement

If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread.



If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.

**✻ NOTICE**

We recommend that when replacing tyres, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles.

If not, that affects driving performance.

**⚠ CAUTION**

When replacing the tyres, recheck and tighten the wheel nuts after driving about 1,000 km (620 miles). If the steering wheel shakes or the vehicle vibrates whilst driving, the tyre is out of balance. Align the tyre balance. If the problem is not solved, contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Replacing tyres**

To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries from an accident caused by tyre failure or loss of vehicle control:

- Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.
- Do not drive your vehicle with too little or too much pressure in your tyres. This can lead to uneven wear and tyre failure.
- When replacing tyres, never mix radial and bias-ply tyres on the same car. You must replace all tyres (including the spare) if moving from radial to bias-ply tyres.
- Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics and poor vehicle control, resulting in a serious accident.
- Wheels that do not meet Kia's specifications may fit poorly and result in damage to the vehicle or unusual handling and poor vehicle control.
- The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. The tyre size affects wheel speed. When replacing tyres, all 4 tyres must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tyres

of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) to work irregularly.

### Compact spare tyre replacement

A compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular size tyre.

Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tyre. The replacement compact spare tyre should be the same size and design tyre as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tyre wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tyre wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tyre.

### Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

**⚠ WARNING**

wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tyre clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.

### Tyre traction

Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyres, tyres that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces.

Tyres should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. Slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road to reduce the possibility of losing control of the vehicle.

### Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear.

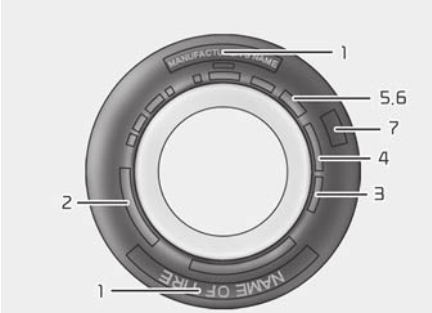
If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have a professional workshop check the wheel alignment. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This

will increase vehicle ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

### Tyre sidewall labeling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the tyre identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification.




ODEEV098031NR

The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.

#### *1. Manufacturer or brand name*

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

#### *2. Tyre size designation*

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your vehicle. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tyre size designation mean.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tyre size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

**P235/60R18 108T**

- P – Applicable vehicle type (tyres marked with the prefix "P" are intended for use on passenger vehicles or light trucks; however, not all tyres have this marking).
- 235 – Tyre width in millimeters.
- 60 – Aspect ratio. The tyre's section height as a percentage of its width.
- R – Tyre construction code (Radial).
- 18 – Rim diameter in inches.
- 108 – Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.
- T – Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

### Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.
Example wheel size designation:
**7.0JX18**

- 7.0: Rim width in inches.

- J: Rim contour designation.
- 18: Rim diameter in inches.

### Tyre speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger car tyres. The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

| Speed Rating Symbol | Maximum Speed |
|---|---|
| S | 180 km/h (112 mph) |
| T | 190 km/h (118 mph) |
| H | 210 km/h (130 mph) |
| V | 240 km/h (149 mph) |
| Z | Above 240 km/h (149 mph) |

### *3. Checking tyre life (TIN: Tyre Identification Number*

Any tyres that are over 6 years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tyre) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code.

The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tyre consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

**DOT: XXXX XXXX 0000**

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tyre size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1620 represents that the tyre was produced in the 16th week of 2020.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Tyre age**

Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used.

Regardless of the remaining tread, we recommend that tyres be replaced after approximately six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tyre failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident involving serious injury or death.

### *4. Tyre ply composition and material*

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tyre. Tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D"

means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

### *5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure*

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure.

Refer to the Tyre and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

### *6. Maximum load rating*

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

### *7. Uniform tyre quality grading*

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:
- TREADWEAR 200
- TRACTION AA
- TEMPERATURE A

**Tread wear**

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-ahalf times (1½) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.
The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate. These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standardor optional equipment on your vehicle may vary with respect to grade.

**Traction – AA, A, B & C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tyre's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.

**Temperature –A, B & C**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tyre's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate

heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.
Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**⚠ WARNING**

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straightahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Tyre temperature**

The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tyre failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.

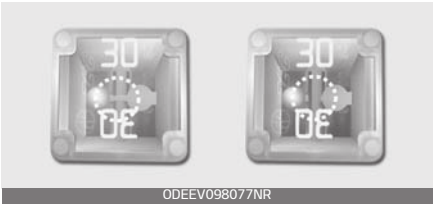
## Fuses

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

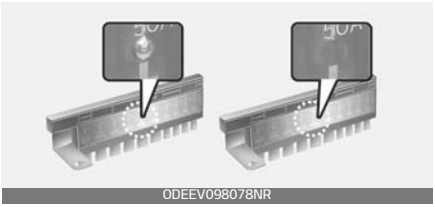
Blade type




Cartridge type




Multi fuse




* Left side: Normal, Right side: Blown

This vehicle has 2 (or 3) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the other in the engine compartment near the battery.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If

a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will melt.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and immediately consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Three kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, and multi fuse for higher amperage ratings.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Fuse replacement**

- Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.
- A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.
- Never install a wire or aluminium foil instead of the proper fuse – even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.
- Do not arbitrarily modify or add-on electric wiring to the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

**✻ NOTICE**

- When replacing a fuse, turn the ignition 'OFF' and turn off switches of all electrical devices then remove battery (–) terminal.
- The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electrical Fire**

Always ensure replacements fuses and relays are securely fastened when installed. Failure to do so can result in a vehicle fire.

Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may be fastened incompletely, and it may cause a possible fire. If fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts are blown, we recommend that you consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## ⚠ CAUTION

When replacing a blown fuse or relay, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. Failure to tightly install the fuse or relay may cause damage to the wiring and electric systems.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- Do not input any other objects except fuses or relays into fuse/relay terminals such as a screwdriver or wiring. It may cause contact failure and system malfunction.
- Do not plug in screwdrivers or aftermarket wiring into the terminal originally designed for fuse and relays only. The electrical system and wiring of the vehicle interior may be damaged or burned due to contact failure.
- If you directly connect the wire on the taillight or replace the bulb which is over the regulated capacity to install trailers etc., the inner junction block can get burned.

## ⚠ WARNING

**Electrical wiring repairs**

All electrical repairs should be performed by authorised Kia dealerships using approved Kia parts. Using other wiring components, especially when retrofitting multimedia or theft alarm system, car phone or radio may cause vehicle damage and increase the risk of a vehicle fire.

## ✻ NOTICE

**Remodelling Prohibited**

Do not rewire your vehicle in any way as doing so may affect the performance of several safety features in your vehicle. Rewiring your vehicle may also void your warranty and cause you to be responsible for any subsequent vehicle damage which may result.

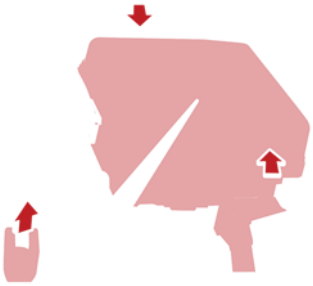
### Inner panel fuse replacement

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.



OYPI079009

3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the main fuse box in the engine compartment.



OYPI079010

4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.
   Spare fuses are provided in the instrument panel fuse panel (or in the engine compartment fuse panel)
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

If it fits loosely, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigarette lighter fuse.

If the headlights or taillights, stoplights, day time running lights (D.R.L) do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse panel in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.

Even without any problem to the lamps, have a check at a professional workshop for assistance. Kia recommends to visit the nearest authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Fuse switch*



OYPI079011

Always, put the fuse switch at the ON position.

If you move the switch to the OFF position, some items such as audio and digital clock must be reset and transmitter (or smart key) may not work properly.

If the fuse switch is in OFF, a warning sign will illuminate on the dashboard.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Put all switches in ON when driving.
- If the vehicle remains idle for over 1 month, put all switches in OFF to prevent the batteries from being discharged.
- Excluding long-term parking for over 1 month, the contact points of switches may wear out upon extensive use.
  Please refrain from excessive use of switches.

### Engine compartment fuse replacement



OYPI079012

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling the cover up.
   When the blade type fuse is disconnected, remove it by using the clip designed for changing fuses located in the engine room fuse box. Upon removal, securely insert reserve fuse of equal quantity.
3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

**⚠ CAUTION**

After checking the fuse panel in the engine compartment, securely install the fuse panel. If not, cover through the audible clicking sound. Electrical failures may occur from water contact.

### *Main fuse*



OYPI079158

If the main fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.

2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

### ✻ NOTICE

The electronic system may not function correctly even when the engine room and internal fuse box's individual fuses are not disconnected. In such case the cause of the problem may be disconnection of the main fuse BFT type), which is located inside the positive battery terminal (+) cap.

Since the main fuse is designed more intricately than other parts, visit a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit the nearest authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Visually inspect the battery cap for secure closing. If the battery cap is not securely latched, the electrical system may be damaged to due influx of moisture into the system.

## Fuse/relay panel description

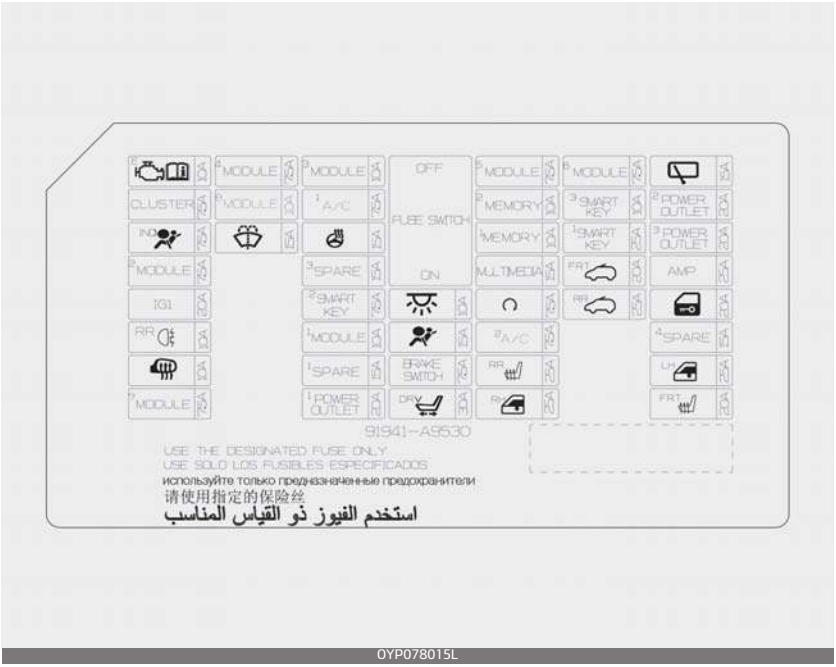


OYPI079014

Inside the fuse/relay panel covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

### NOTICE

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.




OYP078015L

## *Inner fuse panel*

| Description | Symbol | Fuse rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|---|
| ECU |  | 10 A | Smart Key Control Module/Immobiliser, ECM/PCM, Injector |
| MODULE 4 | 4 MODULE | 7.5 A | Head Lamp Levelling Device Actuator LH/RH, Multimedia Check Connector, Bezel Switch, Electro Chromic, A/C Control Module, ATM Shift Lever ILL., Heater Control Module, Passenger Ventilation Seat Control Module, Driver IMS Control Module, Rear Seat Heater Control Module, Auto Head Lamp Levelling Device Module |
| MODULE 3 | 3 MODULE | 10 A | Reverse Parking Distance Warning Buzzer, Reverse Parking Distance Warning Sensor LH/RH, Reverse Parking Distance Warning Sensor LH/RH (Centre) |
| MODULE 5 | 5 MODULE | 7.5 A | Rear Seat Heater Control Module, Passenger Ventilation Seat Control Module, Heater Control Module, Portable Lamp, Surround View Unit |
| MODULE 6 | 6 MODULE | 7.5 A | BCM, Smart Key Control Module |
| WIPER RR |  | 15 A | Wiper RR Relay, Rear Wiper Motor |
| CLUSTER | CLUSTER | 7.5 A | Instrument Cluster |
| MODULE 8 | 8 MODULE | 10 A | - |
| A/CON 1 | 1  | 7.5 A | A/C Control Module, E/R Junction Block (RLY.10, RLY.9), Ionizer, Rear A/C Control Switch, PCB Block (Head Lamp Washer Relay, Blower Relay, Blower RR Relay) |
| MEMORY 2 | 2 MEMORY | 10 A | Data Link Connector, Instrument Cluster, Digital Clock, A/C Control Module, BCM, Power Sliding Door Module, Driver Door Module, Passenger Door Module, Passenger Safety Power Window Switch, Driver IMS Control Module |
| SMART KEY 3 | 3 SMART KEY | 10 A | Start/Stop Button Switch, Immobiliser Module |
| POWER OUTLET 2 | 2 POWER OUTLET | 20 A | Front Power Outlet |
| A/BAG IND | IND  | 7.5 A | Instrument Cluster, Digital Clock |
| WASHER |  | 15 A | Multifunction Switch, BCM |

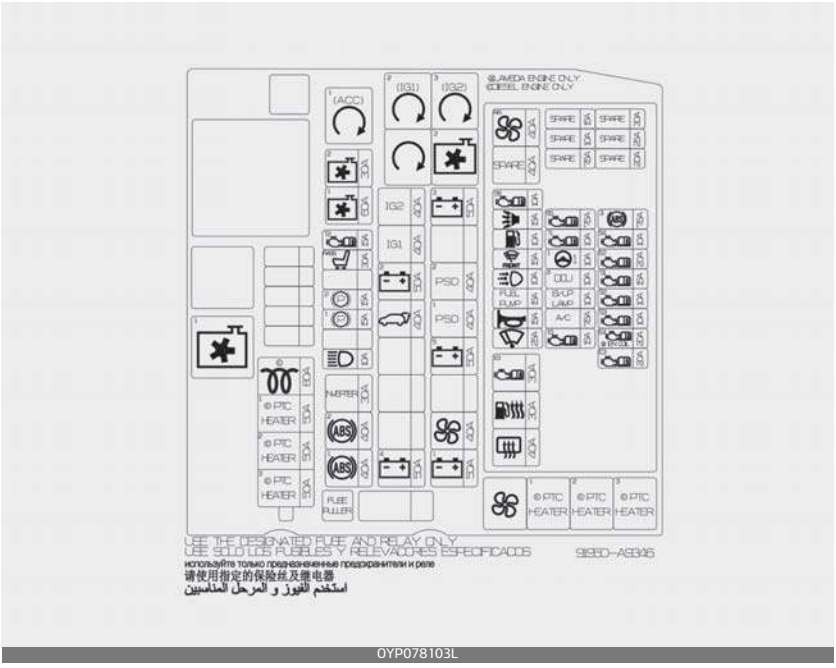
| Description | Symbol | Fuse rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|---|
| HEATED STEERING | | 15 A | Clock Spring (Steering Wheel Switch) |
| MEMORY 1 | 1 MEMORY | 10 A | Clock Spring (Steering Wheel Switch) |
| SMART KEY 1 | 1 SMART KEY | 25 A | Smart Key Control Module |
| POWER OUTLET 3 | 3 POWER OUTLET | 20 A | Rear Power Outlet |
| MODULE 2 | 2 MODULE | 7.5 A | BCM, Driver/Passenger Door Module |
| SPARE 3 | 3 SPARE | 15 A | - |
| MULTIMEDIA | MULTIMEDIA | 15 A | Audio, USB Charger #1/#2 |
| S/ROOF FRT | FRT | 20 A | Front Sunroof Motor |
| AMP | AMP | 25 A | AMP |
| IG1 | IG1 | 20 A | PCB Block (Fuse - F14, F15, F17, F21) |
| SMART KEY 2 | 2 SMART KEY | 7.5 A | Smart Key Control Module |
| INTERIOR LAMP | | 10 A | Portable Lamp, Overhead Console Lamp, Cargo Lamp, Front Vanity Lamp Switch LH/RH, Glove Box Lamp, Key Warning Switch |
| START | | 7.5 A | With IMMO./Smart Key: Transmission Range Switch<br>W/O IMMO.: PCB Block (B/Alarm Relay) |
| S/ROOF RR | RR | 25 A | Rear Sunroof Motor |
| DOOR LOCK | | 20 A | Smart Junction Block (Tail Gate Relay, Door Lock/ Unlock Relay, Sliding Door Lock/Unlock Relay) |
| MODULE 1 | 1 MODULE | 10 A | Audio, Surround View Unit, BCM, Overhead Console Lamp, Digital Clock, AMP, USB Charger #1/#2, Wireless charger |
| AIR BAG | | 15 A | SRS Control Module |
| A/CON 2 | 2 | 7.5 A | A/C Control Module |
| SPARE 4 | 4 SPARE | 15 A | - |
| HEATED MIRROR | | 10 A | A/C Control Module, Passenger Power Outlet Mirror |
| SPARE 1 | 1 SPARE | 15 A | - |

| Description | Symbol | Fuse rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|---|
| BRAKE SWITCH | BRAKE SWITCH | 7.5 A | PCM, Smart Key Control Module, Stop Lamp Switch |
| S/HEATER RR | RR | 25 A | Rear Seat Heater Control Module |
| P/WINDOW LH | LH | 25 A | LHD: Driver Safety Window Module, Driver Door Module<br>RHD: Passenger Safety Window Module, Passenger Power Window Switch, Passenger Door Module W/O Auto Up/Down: Rear Power Window Switch LH<br>With Auto Up/Down: Rear Safety Power Window Module LH, Rear Safety Power Window Switch LH |
| MODULE 7 | 7 MODULE | 7.5 A | Fuel Lid Switch, ATM Lever Switch, Rear A/C Control Switch |
| POWER OUTLET 1 | 1 POWER OUTLET | 20 A | Front Power Outlet |
| P/SEAT (DRV) | DRV | 30 A | Driver Manual Switch, Driver IMS Control Module, Driver Lumbar Support Switch |
| P/WINDOW RH | RH | 25 A | RHD: Driver Safety Window Module, Driver Door Module<br>LHD: Passenger Safety Window Module, Passenger Power Window Switch, Passenger Door Module<br>W/O Auto Up/Down: Rear Power Window Switch RH<br>With Auto Up/Down: Rear Safety Power Window Module RH, Rear Safety Power Window Switch RH |
| S/HEATER FRT | FRT | 20 A | Passengrer Ventilation Seat Control Module, Heater Control Module |

## *Engine compartment fuse panel*



OYPI079053




OYP078103L

7

## *Engine compartment fuse panel*

| Description | Symbol | Fuse rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|---|
| GLOW |  | 80 A | D4HB: Glow Relay Unit |
| PTC HEATER 1 |  | 50 A | E/R Junction Block (RLY.8) |
| PTC HEATER 2 |  | 50 A | E/R Junction Block (RLY.9) |
| PTC HEATER 3 |  | 50 A | E/R Junction Block (RLY.10) |
| C/FAN 2 |  | 30 A | E/R Junction Block (RLY.6) |
| C/FAN 1 |  | 60 A | E/R Junction Block (RLY.5) |
| TCU 2 |  | 15 A | TCM |
| P/SEAT PASS |  | 30 A | Passenger Manual Switch |
| EPB 2 |  | 15 A | EPB Unit |
| EPB 1 |  | 15 A | EPB Unit |
| H/LAMP HI |  | 10 A | Head Lamp High Solenoid |
| INVERTER | INVERTER | 30 A | - |
| ABS 2 |  | 40 A | ABS Control Module/ESC Control Module |
| ABS 1 |  | 40 A | ABS Control Module/ESC Control Module |
| IG2 | IG2 | 40 A | E/R Junction Block (RLY.1, RLY.2)/ Ignition Switch |
| IG1 | IG1 | 40 A | E/R Junction Block (RLY.3, RLY.4), Ignition Switch |
| B+ 2 |  | 50 A | Smart Junction Block (Fuse - F42, F43, Leak Current Autocut Device Fuse - F10, F16, F21, F26) |
| POWER TAIL GATE |  | 40 A | Power Tail Gate Module |
| B+ 4 |  | 50 A | Smart Junction Block (IPS3, IPS4, IPS5, IPS6, Fuse - F30, F40) |
| B+ 3 |  | 50 A | Smart Junction Block (IPS1, IPS2) |
| PSD 2 | PSD | 40 A | Power Sliding Door Module |

| Description | Symbol | Fuse rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|---|
| PSD 1 | 1 PSD | 40 A | Power Sliding Door Module |
| B+ 5 | 5 | 50 A | Smart Junction Block (Power Outlet Relay, Fuse – F11, F17, F22, F23, F28, F37) |
| BLOWER | | 40 A | Blower Relay |
| B+ 1 | 1 | 50 A | Smart Junction Block (Fuse – F29, F39, F44) |
| BLOWER RR | RR | 40 A | PCB Block (Blower RR Relay) |
| SENSOR (B+) | S6 | 10 A | Battery Sensor |
| B/ALARM HORN | | 10 A | PCB Block (B/Alarm Horn Relay) |
| FUEL LID | | 10 A | PCB Block (Fuel Lid Relay) |
| DEICER | FRONT | 15 A | PCB Block (Deicer Relay) |
| DRL | | 10 A | DRL Relay |
| FUEL PUMP | FUEL PUMP | 15 A | PCB Block (Fuel Pump Relay) |
| HORN | | 15 A | PCB Block (Horn Relay) |
| WIPER | | 25 A | PCB Block (Front Wiper (Low) Relay) |
| ECU 3 | E3 | 30 A | PCB Block (Engine Control Relay) |
| FUEL HEATER | | 30 A | PCB Block (Fuel Heater Relay) |
| REAR HEATED | REAR HEATED | 40 A | PCB Block (Rear Heater Relay) |
| SENSOR 5 | S5 | 7.5 A | D4HB: Glow Relay Unit, Fuel Filter Warning Sensor, PCB Block (Fuel Heater Relay) |
| TCU | T1 | 15 A | Transmission Range Switch, TCM (D4HB) |
| B/UP LAMP | B/UP LAMP | 10 A | Audio, Rear Combination Lamp (IN) LH/RH, Electro Chromic Mirror |
| A/CON | | 7.5 A | Rear A/C Control Switch |
| ECU 1 | E1 | 15 A | PCM/TCM |
| ABS 3 | 3 ABS | 7.5 A | ABS Control Module/ESC Control Module, Steering Angle Sensor |

| Description | Symbol | Fuse rating | Protected Component |
|---|---|---|---|
| SENSOR 4 |  | 10 A | GSL: Fuel Pump Relay |
| ECU 2 |  | 20 A | ECM |
| SENSOR 1 |  | 15 A | GSL: Oxygen Sensor #1~#4, E/R Junction Block (RLY.5), PCM<br>DSL: Lambda Sensor, Electronic VGT Actuator, Fuel Metering Unit, E/R Junction Block (RLY.5) |
| SENSOR 2 |  | 10 A | GSL: PCM, Variable Intake Solenoid Valve #1/#2, Purge Control Solenoid Valve, Oil Control Valve #1/#2 (Intake)/(Exhaust)<br>DSL: Air Flow Sensor, EGR Cooling Bypass Solenoid Valve, E/R Junction Block (RLY.8) |
| SENSOR 3 |  | 10 A | G6DH: PCM<br>G6DF: PCM, Injector #1~#6, Fuel Pump Relay<br>D4HB: Stop Lamp Switch, Crankshaft Position Sensor, PCB Block (Fuel Pump Relay) |
| IGN COIL(GSL)<br>ECU 4(DSL) |  | 20 A | GSL: Ignition Coil #1~#6, Condensor #1/#2<br>DSL: ECM |
| ECU 3 |  | 20 A | ECM |

| No. | Relay Name | Type |
|---|---|---|
| E70 | PDM1 Relay | MICRO |
| E71 | PDM2 Relay | MICRO |
| E72 | PDM3 Relay | MICRO |
| E73 | Start Relay | H/C MICRO |
| E74 | Cooling Fan1 Relay | MINI 25375 |
| E75 | Cooling Fan2 Relay | H/C MICRO |
| E76 | Blower Relay | MICRO |
| E77 | PTC Heater 1 Relay | H/C MICRO |
| E78 | PTC Heater 2 Relay | H/C MICRO |
| E79 | PTC Heater 3 Relay | H/C MICRO |

## Light bulbs

### Bulb replacement precaution

Please prepare bulbs with appropriate standards in case of emergencies.

Refer to "Bulb wattage" on page 8-4. When changing bulbs and sorts, first turn off the engine at a safe place, firmly apply the side brake and take out the battery's negative (-) terminal.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Working on the lights**

Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is turned to the LOCK position and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

Use only the bulbs of the specified wattage

**⚠ WARNING**

Be sure to replace the burnedout bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause extensive wiring damage and possible fire.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If you don't have necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlight assembly to get to the bulb(s). Removing/ installing the headlight assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- If unauthentic parts or substandard lights are used when changing lights, it may lead to fuse disconnection and malfunction, and other wiring damages.
- Do not install extra lamps or LED to the vehicle. If supplementary lights are installed, it may lead to lamp malfunction and flickering of the lights. In addition, the fuse box and other writing may be damaged.

### *Lamp part malfunction due to network failure*

The headlamp, taillight, and fog light may lit up when the head lamp switch is turned ON, and not light up when the taillight or for light switch is turned ON.

his may be cause by network failure or vehicle electrical control system malfunction. If there is a problem, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Lamp part malfunction due to electrical control system stabilisation*

A normally functioning lamp may flicker momentarily. This momentary occurrence is due to stabilisation function of the vehicle's electrical control system. If the lamp soon returns to normal, the vehicle does not require service.

However, if the lamp goes out after the momentary flickering, or the flickering continues, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### ✻ NOTICE

- If the light bulb or lamp connector is removed from an operating lamp activated by electricity, the fuse box's electronic device may scan it as a malfunction. Therefore, a lamp malfunction history may be recorded in Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) in the fuse box.
- It is normal for an operating lamp may blink temporarily. Since this occurrence is due stabilisation function of the vehicle's electronic control device, if the lamp lights up normally after temporary blinking, there is no problem in the vehicle.
  However, if the lamp continues to blink several times or turn off completely, there may be an error in the vehicle's electronic control device. In this case, have the vehicle checked by a professional workshop immediately. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

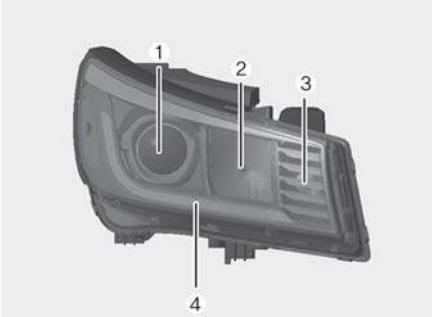
### ✻ NOTICE

You can find moisture inside the lens of lamps after a car wash or driving in the rain. It is a natural event caused by the temperature difference between the inside and the outside of the lamp and does not mean a problem with its functions.

The moisture inside the lamp would disappear if you drive the vehicle with the headlamp turned on, however, the level at which the moisture is removed may differ depending on the size / location / condition of the lamp. If the moisture continues to stay inside the lamp, Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

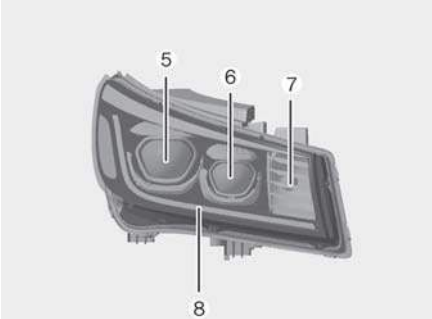
## Light bulb position (Front)

Head lamp – Type A




OYP078104L

Head lamp – Type B




OYP078105L

Fog lamp




OYPI079108

1. Headlamp (Low) (Bulb type)
2. Headlamp (High) (Bulb type)
3. Front turn signal lamp (Bulb type)
4. Position lamp (LED type)
5. Headlamp (Low/High) (LED type)
6. Headlamp (Low Assist) (LED type)
7. Front turn signal lamp (Bulb type)
8. Position lamp (LED type)
9. Front fog lamp (LED type)

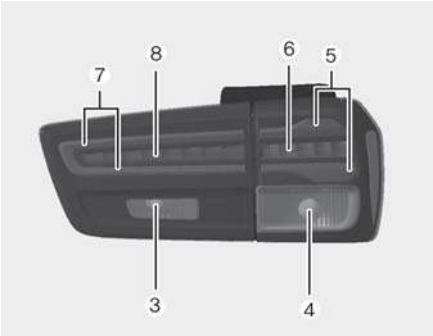
## Light bulb position (Rear)

Rear combination lamp – Type A




OYP078109L

Rear combination lamp - Type B




License plate lamp




High mounted stop lamp



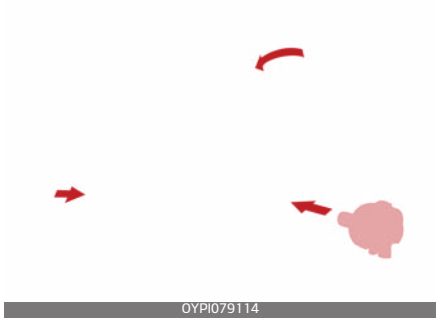

1. Stop and tail lamp (Bulb type)
2. Tail lamp (Bulb type)
3. Back up lamp (Bulb type)
4. Rear turn signal lamp (Bulb type)
5. 6, 7, 8 Stop and tail lamp (LED type)
6. License plate lamp (Bulb type)
7. High mounted stop lamp (LED type)

## Light bulb position (Side)




1. Side repeater lamp (LED type)

## Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A)




1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the headlamp bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.

3. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the bulb-socket in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the headlamp assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
7. Install the headlamp bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

### *Headlamp bulb*



OYPI079159

**⚠ WARNING**

**Halogen bulbs**

- Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.
- Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids.

---

- Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit.
  A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlight.
- If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.
- Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.

### Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A)



OYPI079115

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the headlamp bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the headlamp bulb socket-connector.
4. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise

until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
5. Install a new bulb-socket assembly in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the headlamp assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
6. Connect the headlamp bulb socket-connector.
7. Install the headlamp bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

### *Headlamp bulb*



OYPI079160

**⚠ WARNING**

**Halogen bulbs**

- Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.
- Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids.
- Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit.
  A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlight.
- If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.
- Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.

### Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A)



OYPI079116

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from the bulb-socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the bulb-socket. Pull the bulb out of the bulb-socket.

4. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
5. Install the socket in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the socket clockwise.

### Position lamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type A)



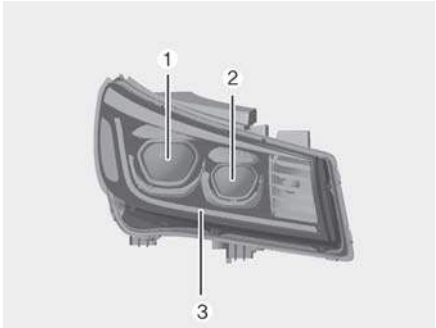
OYP078118N

If the position lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the position lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

### Headlamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type B)



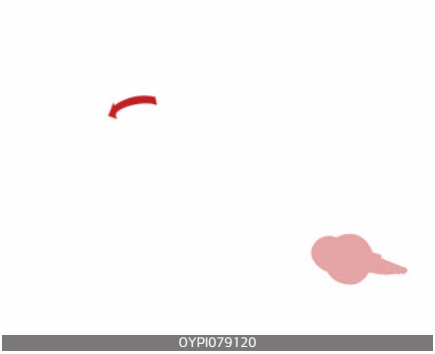
OYP078119L

If the Low/High beam lamp (1), Low assist beam lamp (2) and Position lamp (3) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the head lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement (Headlamp Type B)



OYPI079120

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from the bulb-socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the bulb-socket. Pull the bulb out of the bulb-socket.
4. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
5. Install the socket in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the socket clockwise.

## Side repeater lamp (LED type) bulb replacement




OYP078113N

If the side repeater lamp (LED) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the side repeater lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

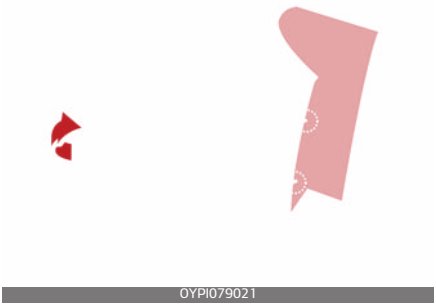
## Front fog lamp bulb replacement




OYP078123N

If the front fog lamp (1) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## Stop and tail lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A)

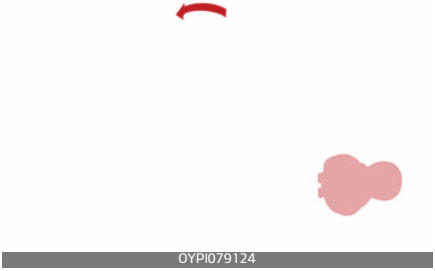


OYPI079021



OYPI079022

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the service cover.
3. Loosen the light assembly retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.
4. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
5. Disconnect the rear combination lamp connector.



OYPI079124

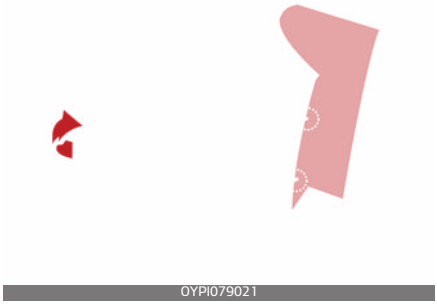
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counter clockwise until the tabs

on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Connect the rear combination lamp connector.
11. Install the rear combination lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.
12. Install the service cover.

**Rear turn signal lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A)**



OYPI079022



OYPI079021

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the service cover.
3. Loosen the light assembly retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.
4. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
5. Disconnect the rear combination lamp connector.



OYPI079125

6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counter clockwise until the tabs

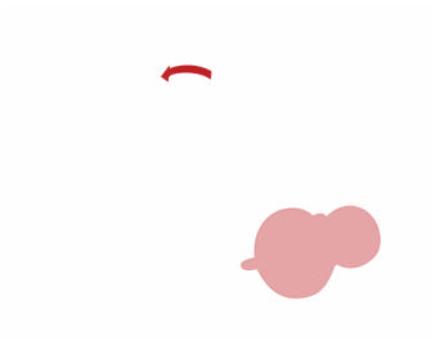
on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Connect the rear combination lamp connector.
11. Install the rear combination lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.
12. Install the service cover.

### Tail lamp (inside) (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A)



OYPI079026

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the service cover.



OYPI079127

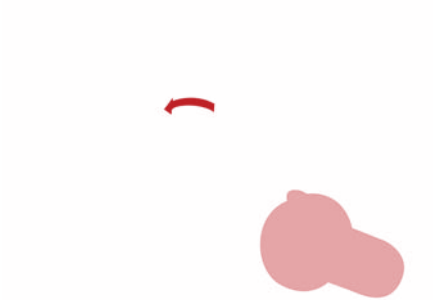
3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counter clockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

## Back-up lamp bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A)



OYPI079026

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the service cover.



OYPI079128

3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

## Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type B)




OYP078129N

If the stop and tail lamp (LED) (1,2,3,4) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the stop and tail lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Rear turn signal lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type B)

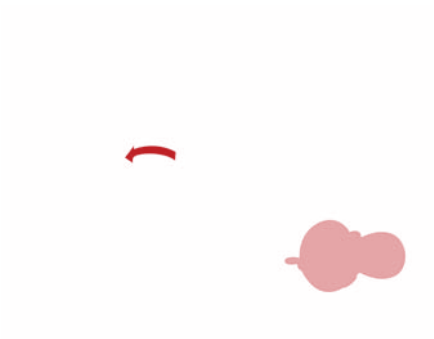


OYPI079021



OYPI079022

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the service cover.
3. Loosen the light assembly retaining screws with a cross-tip screwdriver.
4. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
5. Disconnect the rear combination lamp connector.



OYPI079131

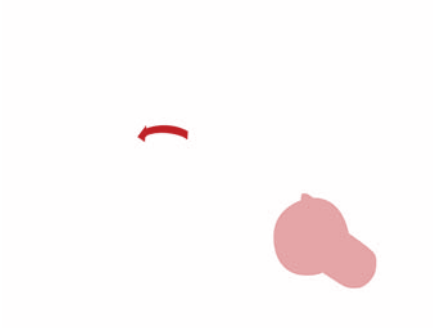
6. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
7. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counter clockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
8. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
9. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
10. Connect the rear combination lamp connector.
11. Install the rear combination lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.
12. Install the service cover.

## Back-up lamp bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type B)



OYPI079026

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the service cover.



OYPI079132

3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the service cover by putting it into the service hole.

## High mounted stop lamp (LED type) bulb replacement



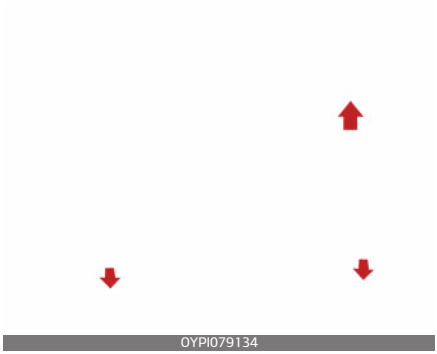

OYP078133N

If the high mounted stop lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the high mounted stop lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

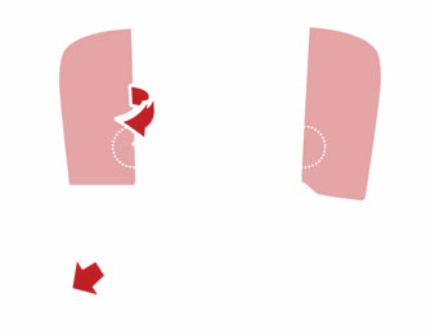
## License plate lamp bulb replacement



OYPI079134

1. Using a screwdriver, the lamp assembly from lamp housing.
2. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
4. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
5. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
6. Install the lamp assembly to lamp housing.

## Map lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement



OYPI079029

**⚠ WARNING**

Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic.

### Replacing map lamp (LED type) bulb

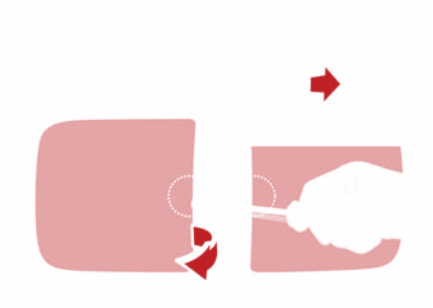
If the map lamp (LED) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single component because they are part of an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the map lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

We recommend that the system be checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### Room lamp bulb replacement



OYPI079031

**⚠ WARNING**

Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

### Replacing room lamp (LED type) bulb

If the Room lamp (LED) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.



OYPI079161

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single component because they are part of an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the Room lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

### Glove box lamp replacement



OYPI079054

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.
2. Remove the cover from the lamp assembly.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
4. Install a new bulb in the socket.
5. Install the cover to the lamp assembly.
6. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

## Luggage lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement



OYPI079032

**⚠ WARNING**

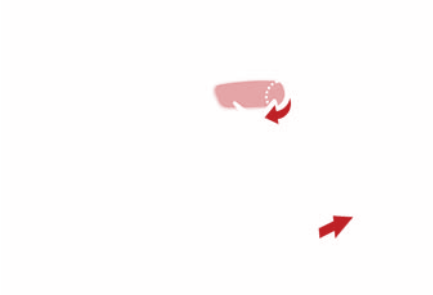
Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

## Vanity mirror lamp (LED type) bulb replacement



OYPI079030

**⚠ WARNING**

Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

### Replacing personal lamp (LED Type) bulb




If the personal lamp (LED) does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the personal lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

## Appearance care

Use the information in the following sections to keep the exterior and interior of your vehicle clean.

### Exterior care

Use the information in the following sections to maintain the exterior of your vehicle. Keeping the exterior clean is not only aesthetically pleasing, but it also helps to prolong the life of the vehicle.

#### *Exterior general caution*

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

#### *Finish maintenance*

#### Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.
If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately. Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.
After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.
After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.
- Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle, especially with high-pressure water. Water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.
- To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.

**⚠ WARNING**

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

### High-pressure washing

When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle. Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.
Do not spray the camera, sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**Wetting engine compartment**



OYPI079135

- Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.
- Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components and air duct inside the vehicle as this may damage them.

### Waxing

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.
Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.
Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.
Be careful not to touch the lens when waxing the lamps.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**Drying vehicle**

- Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.
- Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, acid detergents or strong detergents containing high alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminium parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.

### *Finish damage repair*

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

## ✻ NOTICE

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

### *Bright-metal maintenance*

To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.

To protect the surfaces of bright metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.

During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

### *Underbody maintenance*

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of the doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

**⚠ WARNING**

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

### *Aluminium wheel maintenance*

The aluminium wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminium wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high speed vehicle wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergents It may damage and corrode the aluminium wheels

coated with a clear protective finish.

### *Corrosion protection*

#### Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produce vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

#### Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

#### High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

#### Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle's surface by moisture that evaporates slowly. Mud is particularly corrosive because it dries slowly and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.
High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

#### To help prevent corrosion

You can help prevent corrosion from beginning by observing the following:

### *Keep your vehicle clean*

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.

When cleaning underneath the vehicle, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.

When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

### *Keep your garage dry*

Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

### *Keep paint and trim in good condition*

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings: Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

### *Don't neglect the interior*

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting and cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilisers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the vehicle.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

## Interior care

Use the information in the following sections to maintain the interior of your vehicle.

### *Interior general precautions*

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. If necessary, use a vinyl cleaner, see product instructions for correct usage.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Electrical components**

Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Leather**

When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.

### *Taking care of leather seats*

- Vacuum the seat periodically to remove dust and sand on the seat. It will prevent abrasion or damage of the leather and maintain its quality.
- Wipe the natural leather seat cover often with dry or soft cloth.
- Sufficient use of a leather protective may prevent abrasion of the cover and helps maintain the colour. Be sure to read the instructions and consult a specialist when using leather coating or protective agents.
- Leather with bright colours (beige, cream beige) is easily contaminated and clear in appearance. Clean the seats frequently.
- Avoid wiping with wet cloth. It may cause the surface to crack.

### *Cleaning the leather seats*

Remove all contaminations instantly. Refer to instructions below for removal of each contaminant.

- Cosmetic products (sunscreen, foundation, etc.)
  - Apply cleansing cream on a cloth and wipe the contaminated point. Wipe off the cream with a wet cloth and remove water with a dry cloth.

- Beverages (coffee, soft drink, etc.)
  - Apply a small amount of neutral detergent and wipe until contaminations do not smear.
- Oil
  - Remove oil instantly with absorbable cloth and wipe with stain remover for natural leather only.
- Chewing gum
  - Harden the gum with ice and remove gradually.

### *Fabric seat cover (if equipped)*

Please clean the fabric seats regularly with a vacuum cleaner in consideration of fabric material characteristics. If they are heavily soiled with beverage stains, etc., use a suitable interior cleaner. To prevent damage to seat covers, wipe off the seat covers down to the seams with a large wiping motion and moderate pressure using a soft sponge or microfiber cloth.

Velcro closures on clothing or sharp objects may cause snagging or scratches on the surface of the seats.

Make sure not to rub such objects against the surface.

### *Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim*

#### Vinyl

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

#### Fabric

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its colour can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained. Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

### *Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing*

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

### *Cleaning the interior window glass*

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with a glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Rear window**

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage of the rear window defroster grid.

## Emission control system

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Kia Warranty Policy section at the end of this manual.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all applicable emission regulations. There are three emission control systems, as follows.

1. Crankcase emission control system
2. Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your vehicle inspected and maintained by an authorised Kia dealer in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.

**Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)**

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the ESC off by pressing the ESC switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC back on by pressing the ESC switch again.**

### 1. Crankcase emission control system

The Positive Crankcase Ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) valve into the induction system.

### 2. Exhaust emission control system

The exhaust emission control system is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions whilst maintaining good vehicle performance.

#### Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Exhaust**

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colourless and odourless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions on this page to avoid CO poisoning.

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

### Operating precautions for catalytic converters

**⚠ WARNING**

**Catalytic converter**

Keep away from the catalytic converter and exhaust system whilst the vehicle is running or immediately thereafter. The exhaust and catalytic systems are very hot and may burn you.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Fire**

- Do not park, idle or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as grass, vegetation, paper, leaves, etc. A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle.
- Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.
Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for gasoline (petrol) engines.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

### Diesel Particulate Filter

The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system removes the soot in the exhaust gas.

Unlike a disposable air filter, the DPF system automatically burns (oxidizes) and removes the accumulated soot according to the driving condition. In other words, the active burning by engine control system

and high exhaust gas temperature caused by normal/high driving condition burns and removes the accumulated soot. However, if the vehicle continues to be driven at repeated short distance or driven at low speed for a long time, the accumulated soot may not be automatically removed because of low exhaust gas temperature. More than a certain amount of soot deposited, the malfunction indicator light () illuminates.

When the malfunction indicator light blinks, it may stop blinking by driving the vehicle at more than 60 km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1500 ~ 2500 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

If the malfunction indicator light () continues to be blinked or the warning massage "Check exhaust system" illuminates in spite of the procedure, visit a professional workshop and check the DPF system. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen and engine durability can be worsen by oil dilution.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)**

It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.

If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.

**Lean NOx Trap**

The Lean NOx Trap (LNT) system removes the nitrogen oxide in the exhaust gas. The smell can occur in the exhaust gas depending on the quality of the fuel and it can degrade NOx reduction performance, please use the regulated automotive diesel fuel.

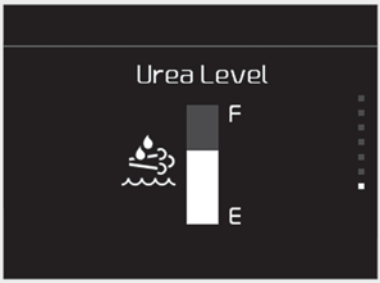
**Selective Catalytic Reduction (if equipped)**

The Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) system is to catalytically convert NOx to Nitrogen and Water by using the reduction agent, the urea solution.

**⚠ WARNING**

- It may be a criminal offence to use a vehicle that does not consume any urea solution.
- Use of, and refilling of, a required urea solution of the correct specifications is mandatory for the vehicle to comply with the certificate of conformity issued for that vehicle type.

### *Urea solution level gauge (if equipped)*




OBD078106L

The urea solution level gauge indicates the approximate amount of remaining urea solution inside the urea solution tank.

### *Low urea solution warning message (if equipped)*



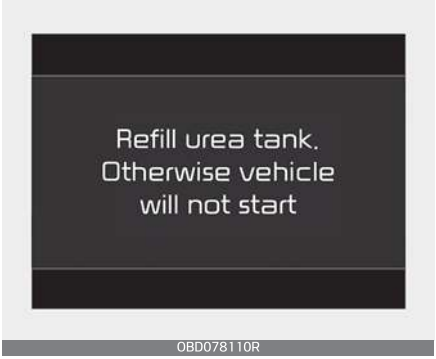

OBD078107L




OBD078108L




OBD078109R




OBD078110R

The “low urea solution” warning messages will start appearing below approximately 5.4 L. When the warning message "Low Urea" is displayed with SCR warning lamp ( ), the urea solution tank needs to be refilled. If not refilled for a considerable mileage, visual warning system will escalate the intensity by displaying the message "Refill Urea" with SCR warning lamp ( ).

In this case, the urea solution tank soon needs to be refilled. The remaining urea solution in the urea solution tank approaches to too low level the warning message "Refill Urea in 000 km or vehicle will not start" with SCR warning lamp ( ). "xxx km(mile)" represents the remaining travel distance allowed, so do not continue driving to the limit of the remaining travel distance without refilling.

Otherwise, the vehicle can't be restarted once the engine is turned off by the ENGINE START/STOP button. Based on the driving pattern, environmental condition and road profile, the deducted remaining mileage may differ from the actual travel distance. When "Low Urea" or "Refill Urea" message is displayed, a sufficient amount of urea solution must be added. When "Refill Urea in 000 km or vehicle will not start" message is displayed, refill a sufficient amount of urea solution.

When "Refill Urea tank or vehicle will not start" message is displayed with SCR warning lamp ( ), the vehicle can't be restarted once the engine is turned off by the ENGINE START/STOP button. For the above cases, full replenishment is always recommended.

### *Malfunction with the SCR system (if equipped)*

| | Upon detecting a malfunction | Driving 50 km after detecting a malfunction |
|---|---|---|
| Urea solution system failure (= no urea solution injection) |  OBD078111R |  OBD078114R |
| Incorrect urea solution detected (= abnormal urea solution) |  OBD078112L |  OBD078115R |
| Abnormal urea-solution-consumption (= post treatment failure) |  OBD078113R |  OBD078114R |

SCR system has malfunction due to disconnected electrical components, incorrect urea solution and so on.

"xxx km (mile)" represents the remaining travel distance allowed, so do not continue driving to the limit of the remaining travel distance without fixing the source of the malfunction. Otherwise, the vehicle can't be restarted once the engine is turned off by the ENGINE START/STOP button. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

## *Clearing the vehicle-restarting restriction (if equipped)*

| No restart | |
|---|---|
| Low urea solution level |  OBD078110R |
| Urea solution system failure (= no urea solution injection) |  OBD078117R |
| Incorrect urea solution detected (= abnormal urea solution) |  OBD078118R |
| Abnormal urea-solution consumption (= post treatment failure) |  OBD078117R |

Once the inducement system reached to final status and disabled the vehicle restart, it will only be deactivated in case the urea solution tank is replenished or the malfunctions have been rectified. If the vehicle can't be restarted with "Refill Urea tank or vehicle will not start" message, refill a sufficient amount of urea solution, wait for minutes and try vehicle starting again. If vehicle starting is not possible regardless of urea solution level, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

### *Adding urea solution*

#### *To refill urea solution with a refill hose*



OYP1049476

1. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button to the OFF position.
2. Turn the urea solution tank cap in a counterclockwise direction to open it.
3. Fully insert the refill hose to add the ISO 22241-specified urea solution. Fill in a sufficient amount of urea solution.
   * Pay great caution not to add the urea solution into the fuel tank. If not, it surely applies adverse impact on the vehicle performance, causing various malfunctions.
   * Never use urea solution mixture with additives or water. It may allow foreign substances to enter the urea solution tank. If so, it surely applies adverse impact on the vehicle performance, causing various malfunctions.
   * Use only the ISO 22241-specified urea solution. Any unauthorised urea solution surely applies adverse impacts on the vehicle performance, causing various malfunctions.
4. Turn the urea solution tank cap in a clockwise direction to securely close it.

***To refill urea solution with a refill bottle***

1. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button to the OFF position.
2. Turn the urea solution tank cap in a counterclockwise direction to open it.
3. Add the ISO 22241-specified urea solution. Fill in a sufficient amount of urea solution.
   * Pay great caution not to add the urea solution into the fuel tank. If not, it surely applies adverse impact on the vehicle performance, causing various malfunctions.
   * Pay great caution not to overfill the (completely) filled urea solution tank by force whilst refilling urea solution from a refill bottle. An over-filled urea solution tank will be expanded when it becomes frozen and this can cause a serious malfunction of the urea solution tank or urea solution system.
   * Never use urea solution mixture with additives or water. It may allow foreign substances to enter the urea solution tank. If so, it surely applies adverse impact on the vehicle performance, causing various malfunctions.
   * Use only the ISO 22241-specified urea solution. Any unauthorised urea solution surely applies adverse impacts on the vehicle performance, causing various malfunctions.
4. Turn the urea solution tank cap in a clockwise direction to securely close it.

Adding urea solution: Every approximately 5,600 km (The urea solution consumption is dependent on the road profile, driving pattern and environmental condition)

* It takes some time to update the cluster gauges after the urea solution injection.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not apply any external impact on the DPF system. It may damage the catalyst, which is equipped inside the DPF system.
- Do not arbitrarily modify or manipulate the DPF system by redirecting or lengthen the exhaust pipe. It may adversely impact the DPF system.
- Avoid contact with drained water from the exhaust pipe. The water is slightly acid and harmful to skin. If contacted, thoroughly wash it.
- Any arbitrary manipulation or modification of the DPF system may cause a system malfunction. The DPF system is controlled by a complex electronic control unit.
- Wait for the DPF system to cool down before the maintenance service, as it is hot due to heat generation. Otherwise, it may cause a skin burn.

- Add only the specified urea solution, when your vehicle is equipped with the urea solution system.
- The urea solution system (i.e. urea solution nozzle, urea solution pump, and DCU) operates for approximately 2 minutes more to eliminate the remaining urea solution inside, even after the ENGINE START/STOP button is pressed to the OFF position. Before the maintenance service, make sure that the urea solution system is completely turned OFF.
- A urea solution of poor quality or any unauthorised liquids may damage the vehicle components, including the DPF system. Any unverified additives in the urea solution may clog the SCR catalyst and cause other malfunctions, which require the expensive DPF system to be replaced.
- When urea solution comes in contact with the eyes or the skin, you should thoroughly wash the contaminated skin area.
- When you swallow urea solution, thoroughly rinse your mouth and drink a lot of fresh water. Then, immediately consult a doctor.
- When your cloth is contaminated with urea solution, immediately change your cloth.
- When you have an allergic reaction to urea solution, immediately consult a doctor.
- Make sure that urea solution is kept out of reach from children.
- Wipe off any urea solution spillage with water or cloth. When urea solution is crystalised, wipe it off with a sponge or a cloth, which was dampened in cold water. When urea solution spillage is exposed in air for an extended period of time, it is crystalised in white, damaging the vehicle surface.
- Urea solution is not a fuel additive. Thus, it should not be injected to the fuel tank. Otherwise, it may damage the engine.
- Urea solution is an aqueous solution, which is inflammable, non-toxic, colourless and odourless.
- Store the urea solution tank only in well-ventilated locations. When urea solution is exposed to the hot temperature at approximately 50°C for an extended period of time (i.e. under direct sunlight), the chemical decomposition may occur, emitting ammonia vapour.

### *Storing urea solution (if equipped)*

- It is improper to store urea solution in containers made of unsuitable materials like aluminium, copper alloy, non-alloyed still and galvanized steel.
  The urea solution dissolves metal materials, severely damaging the exhaust purification system to be non-repairable.
- Store urea solution only in containers made of the following materials.
  - DIN EN 10 088-1-/-2-/-3- specified CR-Ni steel, Mo-Cr-Ni steel, Polypropylene and Polyethylene

### *Urea solution purity*

- The following situations may damage the DPF system.
  - Fuels or any unauthorised liquids are added into the urea solution tank.
  - Additives are mixed with urea solution.
  - Water is added to dilute the urea solution.
- Use only the ISO 22241- or DIN70070-specified urea solution. When any unauthorised urea solution is added to the urea solution tank, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- When any unauthorised impurities enter the urea solution tank, it may lead to the following problems.
  - Increased emission
  - Malfunction with the DPF system
  - Engine failure

Never add any used urea solution, which is drained from the urea solution tank (i.e. whilst maintaining the vehicle). Its purity cannot be guaranteed. Always add new urea solution.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Specification of the stadard urea solution** | Liquid such as diesel, petrol and alcohol shall never be used for SCR system. Any fluid other than recommended urea solution (conform to ISO22241 or DIN70070) can damage SCR system hardware and deteriorate vehicle emission. |

**⚠ WARNING**

- When opening the urea solution tank cap at high outside temperatures, ammonia vapours may escape. Ammonia vapours have a pungent smell and primarily cause irritation of the:
  - Skin
  - Mucous membranes
  - Eyes

  You may experience a burning sensation in your eyes, nose and throat, as well as coughing and watering of the eyes. Do not inhale ammonia vapours. Do not allow urea solution to come in direct contact with your skin. It is hazardous to your health. Wash any affected areas off with plenty of clean water. If necessary, consult a doctor.
- When handling with urea solution in closed space, ensure good ventilation. When the bottle of urea solution container is opened, pungent smelling fumes may escape.
- Keep urea solution out of reach of children.
- When urea solution overflows the vehicle surface, wash out the surface with clean water to prevent any corrosion.
- When replenishing, be careful lest the urea solution should overflow.
- In case the vehicle was parked at very low ambient temperature (below –11 degree Celcius) for a long time, the urea solution will be frozen in the urea solution tank. With frozen urea solution, the urea solution tank level may not be detected correctly until the urea solution will be defrosted by activated heater. Incorrect urea solution or diluted urea solution can increase the freezing point, and thus defrosting may not be properly done by the heater which is activated below certain temperatures. This phenomenon may cause malfunction of the SCR system which can lead to the prohibition of engine restarting.
- The time to defrost the urea solution varies in accordance with driving conditions and outside temperatures.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- If defective urea solution or unrecommended liquid is supplied, damage on car parts such as emission reduction devices can be caused. If defective fuel is added, foreign objects will be accumulated to SCR catalyst and cause it to get clogged and break.
  After adding incorrect urea solution, please visit the nearby authorised Kia dealer/ service partner as early as possible.
- Liquid that are not recommended such as diesel, petrol, and alcohol shall never be used other than the recommended urea solution that satisfy ISO22241 or DIN70070.

# Specifications & Consumer information

8


**Dimensions** ..... **8-2**
**Engine** ..... **8-2**
**Gross vehicle weight** ..... **8-2**
**Luggage volume** ..... **8-3**
**Air conditioning system** ..... **8-3**
**Bulb wattage** ..... **8-4**
**Tyres and wheels** ..... **8-5**
**Recommended lubricants and capacities** ..... **8-6**
• Recommended SAE viscosity number ..... 8-7
**Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)** ..... **8-8**
**Vehicle certification label** ..... **8-8**
**Tyre specification and pressure label** ..... **8-9**
**Engine number** ..... **8-9**
**Air conditioner compressor label** ..... **8-10**
**Refrigerant label** ..... **8-10**
**Declaration of conformity** ..... **8-10**

# SPECIFICATIONS & CONSUMER INFORMATION

## Dimensions

| Item | | | mm (in) |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 7, 8, 9 Seats |
| Overall length | | | 5,115 (201.4) |
| Overall width | | | 1,985 (78.1) |
| Overall height | Without roof rack | | 1,740 (68.5) |
| | With roof rack | | 1,740 (68.5) |
| Tread | Front | 235/60 R18 | 1,738 (68.4) |
| | Rear | 235/60 R18 | 1,741 (68.5) |
| Wheelbase | | | 3,060 (120.5) |

## Engine

| Item | Diesel R2.2 |
|---|---|
| Displacement: [cc (cu. in)] | 2,199 (134.19) |
| Bore x Stroke: [mm (in.)] | 85.4x96 (3.34x3.77) |
| Firing order | 1-3-4-2 |
| No. of cylinders | 4, In-line |

## Gross vehicle weight

Unit: kg (lbs)

| Item | 9 Seats | 8 Seats | 7 Seats | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | HTX | HTK | HTE |
| Diesel R2.2 | 2,923 (6,444) | 2,765 (6,096) | 2,776 (6,120) | 2,730 (6,019) | 2,730 (6,019) |

## Luggage volume

Unit: L (cu ft)

| Item | | 9 Seats | 7, 8 Seats |
|---|---|---|---|
| VDA | MIN. | 29 (1.0) | 540 (19.1) |
| | MAX. | 2,376 (83.9) | 2,759 (97.4) |

- Min: Behind rear seat to upper edge of the seat back.
- Max: Behind front seat to roof.

## Air conditioning system

| Item | Weight of volume (g) | Classification |
|---|---|---|
| Refrigerant | 1,000±25g | R134a |
| Compressor lubricant | 210±10g | FD46XG (IDEMITSU) |

Please contact a professional workshop for more details.

Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

# Bulb wattage

| Light Bulb | | | Wattage | Bulb type |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Front | Headlamps (low) | Bulb type | H7 | 55 |
| | | LED type | LED | LED |
| | Headlamps (high) | | HB3 | 60 |
| | Front turn signal lamps | | PY21W | 21 |
| | Front position lamps | | LED | LED |
| | Front fog lamps * | | LED | LED |
| | Side repeater lamps | | LED | LED |
| Rear combination lamp - Type A | Rear tail/stop lamps | | P21/5W | 21/5 |
| | Rear tail lamps | | P21/5W | 21/5 |
| | Back-up lamps | | W16W | 16 |
| | Rear turn signal lamps | | P21/5W | 21/5 |
| Rear combination lamp - Type B | Rear tail/stop lamps (outside) | | LED | LED |
| | Rear tail/stop lamps (inside) | | LED | LED |
| | Stop lamps (outside) | | LED | LED |
| | Stop lamps (inside) | | LED | LED |
| | Back-up lamps | | W16W | 16 |
| | Rear turn signal lamps | | P21/5W | 21/5 |
| Rear | High mounted stop lamps | | LED | LED |
| | License plate lamps | | W5W | 5 |
| Interior | Map lamps | Bulb type | W10W | 10 |
| | | LED type | LED | LED |
| | Room lamps | Bulb type | FESTOON | 10 |
| | | LED type | LED | LED |
| | Vanity mirror lamps * | | FESTOON | 5 |
| | Personal lamps * | | LED | LED |
| | Luggage lamps | Bulb type | FESTOON | 10 |
| | | LED type | LED | LED |

*: if equipped

## Tyres and wheels

| Item | Tyre size | Wheel size | Load capacity | | Speed capacity | | Inflation pressure [bar (psi, kPa)] | | | | Wheel lug nut torque kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | Normal load*1 | | Maximum load | | |
| | | | LI*2 | kg | SS*3 | km/h | Front | Rear | Front | Rear | |
| Full size tyre | 235/60 R18 | 7.0Jx18 (alloy) | 103 | 875 | H | 210 | 2.4 (35, 240) | 2.4 (35, 240) | 2.4 (35, 240) | 2.4 (35, 240) | 11~13 (79~94, 107~127) |
| Compact spare tyre | T135/80 R18 | 4.0Tx18 | 104 | 900 | M | 130 | 4.2 (60, 420) | 4.2 (60, 420) | 4.2 (60, 420) | 4.2 (60, 420) | |

*1. Normal load: Up to 3 persons
*2. Load Index
*3. Speed Symbol

### ✻ NOTICE

- We recommend that when replacing tyres, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles. If not, that affects driving performance.
- When driving in high altitude grades, it is natural for the atmospheric pressure to decrease. Therefore, please check the tyre pressure and add more air when necessary.
  Additionally required tyre air pressure per km above sea level: 10.5 kpa (1.5 psi)/km.

### ⚠ CAUTION

When replacing tyres, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.

Using tyres of a different size can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.

## Recommended lubricants and capacities

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality.

The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

| Lubricant | | Volume (L) | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil*1*2 (drain and refill) Recommends | R2.2 with DPF*3 | 6.5 | ACEA C3 or C2 |
| | R2.2 without DPF | | |
| Automatic transmission fluid | R2.2 | 7.1 | SP4-M1 |
| Coolant | R2.2 | 12.1 | Mixture of antifreeze and water (Ethylene glycol base coolant for aluminium radiator) |
| Power steering fluid | | 1.0~1.5 | PSF-4 |
| Brake fluid reservoir | | 571±20cc | Dot 3 or Dot 4 |
| Urea fluid | | 14 | ISO22241, DIN70070 |
| Fuel | | 60 | - |

*1. Refer to "Recommended SAE viscosity number" on page 8-7.

*2. Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year's time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

*3. Diesel Particulate Filter

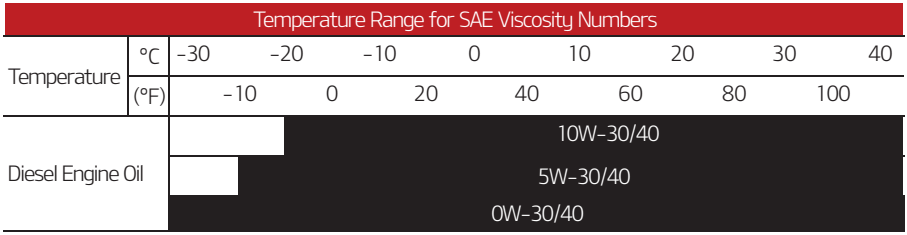
### Recommended SAE viscosity number

**⚠ CAUTION**

Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.

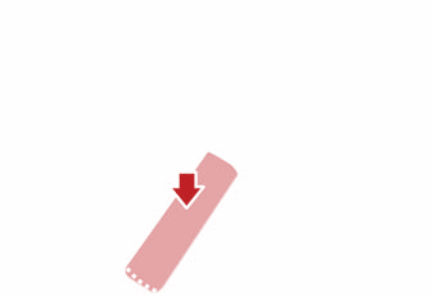
Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather.

Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage. When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.



## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.



OYPI089001

The number is punched on the floor under the driver seat. To check the number, open the cover.



OYPI089008

The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windscreen from outside.

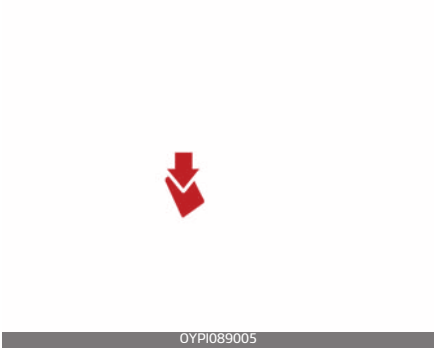
## Vehicle certification label



OYPI089002

The vehicle certification label attached on the front passenger's side centre pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

## Tyre specification and pressure label



OYPI089005

The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar gives the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.

## Engine number



OYPI089004

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

## Air conditioner compressor label



OYPI089009

A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

## Refrigerant label

The refrigerant label is located on the front body trim.

## Declaration of conformity

CE CE 0678

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on Kia web site as follows;

http://www.kia-hotline.com

# Abbreviation A

# ABBREVIATION

**ABS**
Anti-Lock Brake System

**ADS**
Auto Defogging System

**ACC**
Accessory

**CRS**
Child Restraint System

**DPF**
Diesel Particulate Filter

**DRL**
Daytime Running Light

**EBD**
Electronic Brake force Distribution

**ECM**
Electric Chromic Mirror

**EPB**
Electronic Parking Brake

**EPS**
Electronic Power Steering

**ESC**
Electronic Stability Control

**GVW**
Gross Vehicle Weight

**GVWR**
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

**HAC**
Hill-start Assist Control

**HID**
High-Intensity Discharge

**HMSL**
High Mounted Stop Lamp

**HUD**
Head-Up Display

**MIL**
Malfunction Indicator Lamp

**PCM**
Powertrain Control Module

**PCSV**
Purge Control Solenoid Valve

**PDW**
Parking Distance Warning

**RPM**
Revolution Per Minute

**RVM**
Rear View Monitor

**SRS**
Supplemental Restraint System

**TCM**
Transmission Control Module

**TPMS**
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

**VIN**
Vehicle Identification Number

# Index I

# INDEX

## A


**accumulated driving information mode** 4-79
**active ECO system** 5-41
**adding urea solution** 7-93
**air bag** 3-68
air bag collision sensors 3-83
curtain air bag 3-80
driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-76
inflation conditions 3-85
non-inflation conditions 3-86
side air bag 3-79
SRS care 3-88
SRS components and functions 3-73
warning and indicator 3-73
**air bag collision sensors** 3-83
**air cleaner filter** 7-28
**air ventilation seat** 4-143
**anti-lock brake system (ABS)** 5-30
**appearance care** 7-77
exterior care 7-77
interior care 7-83
**applying the parking brake** 5-22
**ashtray** 4-140
**audio system** 4-154
radio 4-155
USB port 4-154
**auto defogging system (ADS)** 4-136
**auto hold** 5-28
**auto light** 4-107
**automatic climate control system** 4-122
air conditioning 4-128
automatic intake control system 4-133
controlling air intake 4-127
controlling fan speed 4-128
heating and air conditioning automatically 4-123
heating and air conditioning manually 4-124
mode selection 4-125
rear climate control 4-130
temperature control 4-126
turning off the front air climate control 4-129
**automatic intake control system** 4-133
**automatic transmission** 5-14
operation 5-14
shift lock system 5-17
**automatic transmission/intelligent variable transmission shift indicator** 4-70


## B


**battery** 7-33
for best battery service 7-33
recharging the battery 7-34
reset items 7-35
**battery saver function** 4-105
**before driving** 5-4
**bonnet** 4-49
closing the bonnet 4-50
opening the bonnet 4-49
**bottle holder** 4-142
**brake fluid** 7-23
**brake system** 5-20
anti-lock brake system (ABS) 5-30
applying the parking brake 5-22
electronic parking brake (EPB) 5-23
electronic stability control (ESC) 5-32
good braking practices 5-36
hill-start assist control (HAC) 5-35
parking brake 5-22
power brakes 5-20
releasing the parking brake 5-22
**bulb replacement** 7-59

## C


**care of seat belt** 3–54
**centre console storage** 4–138
**changing tyres** 6–20
compact spare tyre 6–24
**check exhaust system** 5–3
**child restraint system (CRS)** 3–55
types 3–57
**child-protector rear door lock** 4–25
**cigarette lighter** 4–140
**climate control air filter** 7–29
**climate control system** 4–117
air conditioning 4–118
air conditioning refrigerant label 4–120
checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant 4–121
climate control air filter 4–119
heating 4–117
system operation 4–117
ventilation 4–117
**clock** 4–149
**closing the bonnet** 4–50
**coat hook** 4–150
**compact spare tyre** 6–24
**cruise control system** 5–37
accelerating temporarily with the cruise control on 5–40
cancelling cruise control 5–40
cruise control switch 5–38
decreasing the cruising speed 5–39
increasing cruise control set speed 5–39
resuming cruising speed 5–40
setting cruise control speed 5–38
turning cruise control off 5–41
**cup holder** 4–141
**curtain air bag** 3–80


## D


**day/night rearview mirror** 4–61
**defogging (windscreen)** 4–134
**defroster** 4–116
**defrosting (windscreen)** 4–134
**digital speedometer** 4–80
**door lock** 4–20
child-protector rear door lock 4–25
from inside the vehicle 4–22
**drive info display** 4–79
**driver's and passenger's front air bag** 3–76
**driving at night** 5–47
**driving in flooded areas** 5–48
**driving in the rain** 5–47
**driving info display** 4–81
**driving off-road** 5–48


## E


**economical operation** 5–42
**electric chromic mirror (ECM) with MTS service** 4–61
**electronic parking brake (EPB)** 5–23
applying the parking brake 5–23
EPB malfunction indicator 5–26
releasing the parking brake 5–24
**electronic stability control (ESC)** 5–32
**emergency commodity** 6–32
first aid kit 6–32
triangle reflector 6–32
**emergency starting** 6–6
jump starting 6–6
push-starting 6–8
**emergency tailgate safety release** 4–27, 4–43
**emergency towing** 6–29
**emission control system** 7–85
adding urea solution 7–93

storing urea solution 7–96
**engine compartment** 7–5
**engine coolant** 7–20
recommended coolant 7–20
**engine coolant temperature gauge** 4–68
**engine oil** 7–19
**engine overheats** 6–8
**engine start/stop button** 5–9
illuminated engine start/stop button 5–9
position 5–9
starting the engine 5–11
**EPB malfunction indicator** 5–26
**exterior features** 4–153
roof rack 4–153

## F

**flat tyre indoor storage** 6–18
**floor mat anchor(s)** 4–150
**fog light (front)** 4–108
**forward/reverse parking distance warning (PDW)** 4–99
non–operational conditions 4–102
operation 4–100
self–diagnosis 4–103
**front seat adjustment – manual** 3–8
**front seat adjustment – power** 3–10
**fuel economy** 4–78
**fuel filler door** 4–51
**fuel filter** 7–27
**fuel gauge** 4–68
**fuel requirements** 1–2
**fuses** 7–45
engine compartment fuse replacement 7–49
fuse/relay panel description 7–51
Inner panel fuse replacement 7–47

## G

**gauges** 4–67
engine coolant temperature gauge 4–68
fuel gauge 4–68
odometer 4–69
outside temperature gauge 4–69
speedometer 4–67
tachometer 4–67
**glove box** 4–139
**glove box lamp** 4–115
**good braking practices** 5–36
**good driving practices** 5–18

## H

**hazardous driving conditions** 5–44
**head light (low beam)** 4–106
**headlight escort function** 4–105
**headlight (headlamp) escort function** 4–115
**headlight leveling device** 4–109
**headrest**
front seat 3–12
rear seat 3–35
**heating and air conditioning automatically** 4–123
**heating and air conditioning manually** 4–124
**highway driving** 5–48
**hill–start assist control (HAC)** 5–35
**horn** 4–60

## I

**illuminated engine start/stop button** 5–9
**illuminated ignition switch** 5–6
**immobiliser system** 4–8
**indicator lights** 4–92
**Information mode** 4–72

**inside rearview mirror** 4-60
**instrument cluster** 4-66
automatic transmission/intelligent variable transmission shift indicator 4-70
engine coolant temperature gauge 4-68
fuel gauge 4-68
gauges 4-67
odometer 4-69
outside temperature gauge 4-69
speedometer 4-67
tachometer 4-67
transmission shift indicator 4-70
**interior features** 4-140
air ventilation seat 4-143
ashtray 4-140
bottle holder 4-142
cigarette lighter 4-140
coat hook 4-150
cup holder 4-141
floor mat anchor(s) 4-150
power outlet 4-144
side curtain 4-151
sun visor 4-142
USB charger 4-145
wireless smart phone charging system 4-147
**interior light** 4-112
glove box lamp 4-115
luggage room lamp 4-114
map lamp 4-112
room lamp 4-113
vanity mirror lamp 4-115

## J

**Jack and tools** 6-16
**jump starting** 6-6

## K

**key** 4-7
folding key 4-7
immobiliser system 4-8
smart key 4-8
**key positions** 5-6
ignition switch position 5-6
illuminated ignition switch 5-6
starting the engine 5-7

## L

**LCD display** 4-70
Information mode 4-72
LCD Display Control 4-70
LCD display modes 4-71
master warning mode 4-72
trip computer mode 4-72
Turn By Turn (TBT) mode 4-72
User settings mode 4-73
**LCD display messages** 4-81
**LCD display modes** 4-71
**LCD displays** 4-77
accumulated driving information mode 4-79
digital speedometer 4-80
drive info display 4-79
driving info display 4-81
fuel economy 4-78
LCD display messages 4-81
service mode 4-80
trip information (trip computer) 4-77
**LCD windows**
urea level gauge (for diesel engine) 4-80
**lighting** 4-105
auto light 4-107
battery saver function 4-105
head light (low beam) 4-106
headlight leveling device 4-109
operating front fog light 4-108
operating high beam 4-107
operating turn signals 4-108
position and tail lamp 4-106
**lights bulbs** 7-59
bulb replacement 7-59
bulb replacement precaution 7-59

Light bulb position 7-61
**low tyre pressure telltale** 6-12
**luggage net holder** 4-152
**luggage room lamp** 4-114
**lumbar support** 3-11

## M

**maintenance services** 7-6
engine compartment precautions 7-7
owner maintenance precautions 7-6
owner's responsibility 7-6
**map lamp** 4-112
**master warning mode** 4-72
**mirrors** 4-60
adjusting the outside rearview mirrors 4-63
conversation mirror 4-62
day/night rearview mirror 4-61
electric chromic mirror (ECM) with MTS service 4-61
folding/unfolding the outside rearview mirror 4-64
inside rearview mirror 4-60
outside rearview mirror 4-62

## O

**odometer** 4-69
**opening the bonnet** 4-49
**operating high beam** 4-107
**outside rearview mirror** 4-62
**outside temperature gauge** 4-69
**owner maintenance** 7-9

## P

**parking brake** 5-22, 7-26
**position and tail lamp** 4-106
**power brakes** 5-20
**power outlet** 4-144
**power sliding door** 4-29
operation 4-33
**power steering fluid** 7-24
**power tailgate** 4-29
operation 4-36
**power window and rear sunroof lock switch** 4-47
**pre-tensioner seat belt** 3-49
**push-starting** 6-8

## R

**rear climate control** 4-130
**Rear seat adjustment**
9 seats 3-15
**rear seat adjustment**
7, 8 seats 3-23
stowing the rear seat - 3rd row seat 3-31
walk-in seat (2nd row seat) 3-24
**rear view monitor (RVM)** 4-104
**reducing the risk of a rollover** 5-45
**releasing the parking brake** 5-22
**remote keyless entry** 4-10
**removing and storing the spare tyre** 6-17
**resetting the sunroof** 4-57
**reverse parking distance warning (PDW)** 4-95
non-operational conditions 4-96
operating condition 4-96
precautions 4-97
self-diagnosis 4-98
**risk of burns when parking or stopping vehicle** 1-4
**rocking the vehicle** 5-46
**roof rack** 4-153
**room lamp** 4-113

## S

**scheduled maintenance items** 7-15
air cleaner filter 7-17

air conditioning refrigerant 7–18
automatic transmission fluid 7–17
brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors 7–18
brake fluid 7–17
brake hoses and lines 7–17
coolant 7–17
cooling system 7–17
drive belts 7–15
drive shafts and boots 7–18
engine oil and filter 7–15
fuel filter cartridge 7–16
fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections 7–16
parking brake 7–18
power steering pump, belt and hoses 7–18
steering gear box, linkage and boots/lower arm ball joint 7–18
suspension mounting bolts 7–18
vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses 7–16
vapor hose and fuel filler cap 7–16
**scheduled maintenance service** 7–11
normal maintenance schedule 7–12
severe usage conditions 7–14
**seat belt** 3–38
care of seat belt 3–54
precautions 3–52
pre–tensioner seat belt 3–49
stowing the rear seat belt 3–48
**seat belt warning** 3–40
**seatback pocket** 3–15
**seats** 3–3
wing–out 3–38
**service mode** 4–80
**side air bag** 3–79
**side curtain** 4–151
**smart key** 4–12
battery replacement 4–15
functions 4–13
precautions 4–14
**smart tailgate** 4–39
**snow tyres** 5–50
**snowy or icy conditions** 5–49
**special driving conditions** 5–44
driving at night 5–47
driving in flooded areas 5–48
driving in the rain 5–47
driving off–road 5–48
hazardous driving conditions 5–44
highway driving 5–48
reducing the risk of a rollover 5–45
rocking the vehicle 5–46
**specifications** 8–2
air conditioner compressor label 8–10
air conditioning system 8–3
bulb wattage 8–4
dimensions 8–2
engine 8–2
engine number 8–9
gross vehicle weight 8–2
lubricants and capacities 8–6
luggage volume 8–3
refrigerant label 8–10
tyre specification and pressure label 8–9
tyres and wheels 8–5
vehicle certification label 8–8
vehicle identification number (VIN) 8–8
**speedometer** 4–67
**SRS care** 3–88
**starting the engine** 5–11
**steering wheel** 4–58
horn 4–60
tilt & telescopic steering wheel 4–59
**storage compartment** 4–137
centre console storage 4–138
glove box 4–139
luggage net holder 4–152
sunglass holder 4–139
**storing urea solution** 7–96
**sun visor** 4–142
**sunglass holder** 4–139
**sunroof** 4–54

automatic reversal 4-55
rear sunroof lock 4-57
resetting the sunroof 4-57
sunroof open warning 4-58
sunshade 4-57
tilting the sunroof 4-56
**sunroof open warning** 4-58
**sunshade** 4-57

## T

**tachometer** 4-67
**tailgate** 4-26
**theft-alarm system** 4-17
armed stage 4-17
disarmed stage 4-19
theft-alarm stage 4-19
**tilt & telescopic steering wheel** 4-59
**tilting the sunroof** 4-56
**towing** 6-28
emergency towing 6-29
removable towing hook 6-29
towing service 6-28
**transmission shift indicator** 4-70
**trip computer mode** 4-72
**trip information (trip computer)** 4-77
accumulated driving information mode 4-79
digital speedometer 4-80
drive info display 4-79
fuel economy 4-78
**Turn By Turn (TBT) mode** 4-72
**turn signals** 4-108
**tyre chains** 5-50
**tyre pressure indicator** 6-10
**tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)** 6-10
low tyre pressure telltale 6-12
malfunction indicator 6-13
tyre pressure indicator 6-10
tyre replacement with TPMS 6-14
**tyres and wheels** 7-36
checking tyre inflation pressure 7-37
compact spare tyre replacement 7-41
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures 7-36
recommended cold tyre inflation pressures 7-36
tyre maintenance 7-41
tyre replacement 7-39
tyre rotation 7-38
tyre sidewall labeling 7-42
tyre traction 7-41
wheel alignment and tyres balance 7-39
wheel replacement 7-41

## U

**urea level gauge (for diesel engine)** 4-80
**USB charger** 4-145
**User settings mode** 4-73

## V

**vanity mirror lamp** 4-115
**vehicld weight**
overloading 5-54
**vehicle break-in process** 1-3
**vehicle identification number (VIN)** 8-8
**vehicle modifications** 1-3
**vehicle weight** 5-53

## W

**Warning and indicator lights** 4-85
**warning and indicator lights**
indicator lights 4-92
warning lights 4-85
**warning lights** 4-85
**washer fluid** 7-25
**welcome system** 4-115

headlight (headlamp) escort function 4–115
**what to do in an emergency** 6–3
hazard warning flasher 6–3
if the engine will not start 6–5
if you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre) 6–16
in case of an emergency whilst driving 6–4
road warning 6–3
**window opening and closing** 4–45
**windows** 4–44
power window and rear sunroof lock switch 4–47
window opening and closing 4–45
**windscreen defrosting and defogging** 4–134
auto defogging system (ADS) 4–136
defogging logic 4–135
**winter driving** 5–49
**wiper blades** 7–31
blade inspection 7–31
blade replacement 7–31
rear window wiper blade 7–32
**wipers and washers** 4–110
operating rear window wiper and washer switch 4–111
operating windscreen washer 4–110
**wireless smart phone charging system** 4–147

# Kia Warranty Policy W


Kia New Vehicle Warranty ..... W-2
Replacement Parts Warranty ..... W-4
Emission Warranty ..... W-6
Kia Extended Warranty ..... W-9
Free Service Coupons ..... W-11
Maintenance Record Sheet ..... W-13
Road Side Assistance ..... W-15

# KIA WARRANTY POLICY

## Kia New Vehicle Warranty

Kia Motor India Limited hereinafter called KMI , warrants that each new Kia vehicle sold shall be free from any defects in material and workmanship, under normal use and maintenance, subject to the following terms and conditions.

### 1. Warranty Period

This warranty shall exist for a period of 36 months from the date of delivery to the first purchaser irrespective of the mileage. However, warranty for Kia vehicle being used for commercial purpose such as Taxi/Tourist operation is 36 months/100,000 kilometres from the date of delivery whichever is earlier. This warranty is transferable to subsequent owner for the remaining warranty period. This warranty is applicable only in India and not transferable to any other country.

### 2. What is covered

Except as provided in paragraph 3 hereof, our Authorized Dealers shall either repair or replace, any Kia genuine part that is acknowledged by KMI to be defective in material or workmanship within the warranty period stipulated above, at no cost to the owner of the Kia vehicle for parts or labour. Such defective parts which have been replaced will become the property of KMI.

### 3. What is not covered

This warranty shall not apply to:

- Normal maintenance services, including without limitation, cleaning and polishing, minor adjustments, engine tuning, oil/fluid changes, filters replenishment, fastener retightening, wheel balancing, wheel alignment and tyre rotation etc.
- Replacement of parts as a result of normal wear and tear such as spark plugs, belts, brake pads and linings, clutch disc/facing, filters, wiper blades, bulbs, fuses, etc.

Damage or failure resulting from:

- Negligence of proper maintenance as required in this Owner s Manual and Service Booklet.
- Misuse, abuse, accident, theft, flooding or fire.
- Use of improper or insufficient fuel, urea solution, fluids or lubricants.

- Use of parts other than Kia Genuine Parts.
- Any device and/or accessories not supplied by KMI.
- Modifications, alterations, tampering or improper repair.
- Parts used in applications of which they were not designed or not approved by KMI.
- Slight irregularities not recognised as affecting quality or function of the vehicle or parts, such as slight noise or vibrations, or items considered characteristic of the vehicle.
- Airborne fallout , Industrial fallout, acid rain, hail and windstorms, or other Acts of God.
- Paint scratches, dents or similar paint or body damage.
- Action of road elements (sand, gravel, dust or road debris) which results in stone chipping of paint or glass.
- Incidental or consequential damages, including without limitation, loss of time, inconvenience, loss of use of vehicle or commercial loss.

*** NOTICE**

Audio, Video Navigation & Telematics System, Batteries, Tyres & Tubes and Audio Systems, originally equipped on Kia vehicles are warranted directly by the respective manufacturers and not by KMI.

- This warranty is the entire warranty given by KMI for Kia vehicles and no dealer or its or his agent or employee is authorized to extend or enlarge this warranty and no dealer or its or his agent or employee is authorized to make any oral warranty on KMI s behalf.
- KMI reserves the right to make any change in design or make any improvement on the vehicle at any time without any obligation to make the same change on vehicles previously sold.
- KMI reserves the right for the final decision in all warranty matters.

### Owner s Responsibilities

- Proper use, maintenance and care of vehicle in accordance with the instructions contained in this Owner s Manual and Service Booklet. If the vehicle is subject to severe usage conditions, such as operation in extremely dusty, rough, more repeated short distance driving or heavy city traffic during hot weather, maintenance of vehicle should be done more frequently as mentioned in this Owner s Manual and Service Booklet.

- Retention of maintenance service records. It may be necessary for the customer to show that the required maintenance has been performed, as specified in this Owner s Manual and Service Booklet.
- Delivery of the vehicle during regular service business hours to any authorized Kia Dealer to obtain warranty service.
- In order to maintain the validity of this Basic Warranty, the vehicle must be serviced by Kia Authorized workshop in accordance to the Owner s Manual and Service Booklet.

## Replacement Parts Warranty

Kia Motor India Limited hereinafter called KMI , warrants that each new Kia Genuine replacement part purchased from and installed by Kia Authorized Dealer shall be free from any defects in material or workmanship, under normal use and maintenance, subject to the following terms and conditions.

### 1. Warranty period

This warranty shall exist for a period of 6 months or until the vehicle has been driven for a distance of 10,000 Kilometres from the date of installation of replacement part by Kia Authorized Dealer, whichever occurs first.

### 2. What is covered

Our Authorized Dealers shall either repair or replace, any Kia genuine par listed in paragraph 3 hereof, that is acknowledged by KMI to be defective in material or workmanship within the warranty period stipulated above, after examinations carried out to confirm that none of the original settings have been tampered with, at no cost to the owner of the Kia vehicle for parts or labour. Such defective parts which have been replaced will become the property of KMI.

### 3. What is not covered

This warranty shall not apply to:

- Normal maintenance services of parts such as cleaning, adjustment or replacement (i.e. spark plugs that are oil fouled, lead fouled, or which fail due to the use of low grade fuel or urea solution).
- Parts that fail due to abuse, misuse, neglect, alteration or accident or which have been improperly lubricated or repaired.
- Parts used in applications for which they were not designed or approved by KMI.
- Failure due to normal wear of parts.
- Direct or indirect failures caused by misuse and improper maintenance of vehicle.
- Any vehicle on which the odometer reading has been altered so that mileage cannot be accurately determined.
- Incidental or consequential damages, including without limitation, loss of time, inconvenience, loss of use of vehicle or commercial loss.

This warranty is the entire warranty given by KMI for Kia replacement parts and no dealer or its or his agent or employee is authorized to extend or enlarge this warranty and no dealer or its or his agent or employee is authorized to make any oral warranty on KMI s behalf. KMI reserves the right for the final decision in all warranty matters.

**Owner s Responsibility :**

- Proper use, maintenance and care of the vehicle in accordance with the instructions contained in the Owner s Manual and Service Booklet.
- Retention of maintenance service records. It may be necessary for the customer to show that the required maintenance has been performed, as specified in this Owner s Manual and Service Booklet.
- Retention of the customer s copy of the original repair order and its invoice/bill against which the part was replaced.
- Delivery of the vehicle during regular service business hours to the same Kia Authorized Dealer who had sold and installed the replacement part.
- In order to maintain the validity of this Parts replacement Warranty, the vehicle must be serviced by Kia Authorized workshop in accordance to the Owner s Manual and Service Booklet.

## Emission Warranty

KMI extends the Mass Emission standards (BS-VI) for all its vehicle across all the states and union territories in India Such cities would be automatically covered subject to other terms of the warranty policy and the conditions and obligations laid down hereunder. Kia Motor India Limited hereinafter called KMI, certifies that the components liable to affect the emission of the gaseous pollutants in the vehicle in normal use despite the use to which it may be subjected, comply with the provisions of Rule 115(2) of the Central Motor Vehicle Rules, 1989 hereinafter referred to as the In-use emission standard , and further warrants that if on examination by a dealer duly authorized by KMI, the vehicle is discovered to be failing to meet the In-use emission standard as specified in the said rule, our Authorized Dealer shall take such corrective measures as may be necessary and shall at its sole discretion either repair or replace free of charge, such components of emission control system as are specified in paragraph 3 hereof.

### 1. Warranty period

This warranty will be in addition to and run parallel to the New Vehicle Warranty and shall exist for a period of 36 months from the date of delivery to the first purchaser, irrespective of the mileage. This warranty is transferable to subsequent owner for the remaining warranty period.

### 2. What is covered

Our Authorized Dealers shall either repair or replace, any Kia genuine part listed in paragraph 3 hereof, that is acknowledged by KMI to be defective in material or workmanship within the warranty period stipulated above, after examinations carried out to confirm that none of the original settings have been tampered with, at no cost to the owner of the Kia vehicle for parts or labour. Such defective parts which have been replaced will become the property of KMI.

### 3. Emission Warranty Parts List

1. Engine Control Module System
   - Engine Control Module
   - Crankshaft Position Sensor
   - Camshaft Position Sensor, Throttle Position Sensor, MAP Sensor, 02 Sensor, IAT & ECT Sensor.
   - Vehicle Speed Signal
   - Brake Switch Signal
   - Mass Air Flow Sensor (MAFS)
2. Fuel Metering System
   - Fuel injectors
   - Fuel Pumps
   - Rail Pressure Sensor
3. Air Induction System
   - Air Cleaner Housing Assembly
   - Throttle Body
   - Intake Manifold
   - Accelerator Position Sensor
   - Boost Pressure Sensor
   - Knock Sensor
   - Turbocharger
   - Intercooler
4. PCV System
   - PCV Valve
   - PCV Hoses
   - Oil Filler Cap
5. Catalytic Converter System
   - Exhaust Manifold
   - Exhaust Pipe Assembly
   - Catalytic Converter
6. LNT, SDPF & SCR system
   - Urea sensors
   - Urea injector
   - Urea pump & tank
   - Differential sensor
   - Temperature sensors
7. Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System (Diesel Engines)
   - EGR Control System
8. Miscellaneous items used in above Systems
   - Vacuum hoses, clamps, fittings, tubing or mounting hardware used with the above systems. Valves, Switches and Solenoids

**What is not covered**

This warranty shall not apply to:

- Normal maintenance services including without limitation, engine tuning, oil/fluid changes, filters replenishment, etc.
- Replacement of parts as a result of normal wear and tear such as spark plugs, filters, etc.
- The vehicle reported without valid Pollution Under Control certificate for the period immediately preceding the test during which the failure is discovered.
- The vehicle which has been run on adulterated fuel, urea solution or lubricant or fuel/lubricants/ urea solution other than those specified by KMI.

Damage or failure resulting from:

- Negligence of proper maintenance as required in this Owner s Manual and Service Booklet.
- Misuse, abuse, accident, theft, flooding or fire.
- Use of improper or insufficient fuel, fluids, urea solution or lubricants.

- Any repair carried out other than by Kia Authorized Dealer/ Service Centre. Use of parts other than Kia Genuine Parts.
- Any device and/or accessories not supplied by KMI.
- Modifications, alterations, tampering or improper repair. not supplied by KMI.
- Parts used in applications for which they were not designed or not approved by KMI.
- Any penalties that may be charged by statutory authorities on account of failure to comply with the In-use emission standards.
- The vehicle in which the odometer has been tampered with, changed or been disconnected.
- Any consequential repairs or replacement of parts which maybe found necessary to establish compliance to In-use emission standards, in addition to the replacement of the components covered under Emission Warranty, will not be made free of cost unless such parts are also found to be in warrantable condition within the scope and limit of the New Vehicle Warranty.
- Incidental or consequential damages, including without limitation, loss of time, inconvenience, loss of use of vehicle or commercial loss.

This warranty is the entire warranty given by KMI for Kia vehicles and no dealer or its or his agent or employee is authorized to extend or enlarge this warranty and no dealer or its or his agent or employee is authorized to make any oral warranty on KMI s behalf.

KMI reserves the right to make any change in design or make any improvement on the vehicle at any time without any obligation to make the same change on vehicles previously sold.

**Owner s Responsibility:**

- Proper use, maintenance and care of the vehicle in accordance with the instructions contained in the Owner s Manual and Service Booklet. If the vehicle is subject to severe usage conditions, such as operation in extremely dusty, rough, more repeated short distance driving or heavy city traffic during hot weather, maintenance of vehicle should be done more frequently as mentioned in this Owner s Manual and Service Booklet.
- In order to maintain the validity of this Emission Warranty, the vehicle must be serviced by Kia Authorized Dealer or Service Centre in accordance to the Owner s Manual and Service Booklet.

- Retention of maintenance service records. It may be necessary for the customer to show that the required maintenance has been performed, as specified in this Owner s Manual and Service Booklet.
- Immediate Delivery of the vehicle to any authorized Kia Dealer upon discovery of failure to comply with the In-use emission standard inspite of proper use, maintenance and care of vehicle in accordance with the instructions contained in this Owner s Manual and Service Booklet.
- Production of Pollution Under Control (PUC) certificate valid for the period immediately preceding the test during which the failure is discovered, the test having been carried out either for obtaining a new certificate, or pursuant upon being directed by an officer as referred to in sub-rule (2) of Rule116 of the Central Motor Vehicles Rules.

## ✻ NOTICE

**KIA Extended Warranty***

KMI offers optional paid extended warranty on selected models, in addition to the basic new vehicle warranty. For more details on Kia Extended Warranty please call the nearest dealer or our toll free number 1800-108-5000.

* Conditions apply

SAMPLE COUPON

## 1st FREE SERVICE COUPON

(800–1,000km or within 1 month of delivery, whichever is earlier)

**Customer Copy**

Model Name _____
Customer's Name _____
VIN _____
Registration No. _____
Mileage _____
Delivery Date _____
Service Date _____
RO Number _____
Dealer code _____

Promise to Care

**Servicing Dealer s Stamp**

Service Mgrs Signature _____

## 2nd FREE SERVICE COUPON

(4,500–5,000km or within 6 months of delivery, whichever is earlier)

**Customer Copy**

Model Name _____
Customer's Name _____
VIN _____
Registration No. _____
Mileage _____
Delivery Date _____
Service Date _____
RO Number _____
Dealer code _____

Promise to Care

**Servicing Dealer s Stamp**

Service Mgrs Signature _____

## 3rd FREE SERVICE COUPON

(9,000–10,000km or within 12 months of delivery, whichever is earlier)

**Customer Copy**

Model Name _____
Customer's Name _____
VIN _____
Registration No. _____
Mileage _____
Delivery Date _____
Service Date _____
RO Number _____
Dealer code _____

Promise to Care

**Servicing Dealer s Stamp**

Service Mgrs Signature _____

Free Service Coupons are valid at all Kia authorized dealerships and workshops across India.

## Free Service for Carnival

| Checklist for Free Service 1,000 KM – 10,000 KM | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first | | | |
| Months | 1 | 6 | 12 |
| Km X 1,000 | 1 | 5 | 10 |
| Engine oil and engine oil filter I R 2.2 L | I | I | R* |
| Coolant level | I | I | I |
| Vacuum hoses and crankcase ventilation hoses | – | I | I |
| Drive shaft and boots | I | I | I |
| Fuel lines, hoses and connections | I | I | I |
| Urea line & connections (if equipped) | I | I | I |
| Urea solution filler cap (if equipped) | I | I | I |
| Air cleaner filter | – | – | R* |
| Exhaust system | I | I | I |
| Cooling system | I | I | I |
| Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant (if equipped) | I | I | I |
| Climate control air filter (if equipped) | – | I | I |
| Brake discs and pads | – | I | I |
| Brake lines, hoses and connections | I | I | I |
| Brake fluid | I | I | I |
| Parking brake (Foot type) | I | I | I |
| Power steering fluid (if equipped) | – | – | I |
| Power steering pump, belt and hoses (if equipped) | I | I | I |
| Steering gear rack, linkage and boots | I | I | I |
| Suspension ball joints | I | I | I |
| Tire (pressure & tread wear) | I | I | I |
| Battery condition | I | I | I |
| Urea level check in cluster & topup (if required) | I | I | I |
| Wheel alignment & balancing# | – | – | I |
| Check all electrical systems & alternator | I | I | I |
| Warning lights operation & KDS system check | I | I | I |
| Road test | Inspect if required | | |

I: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace R: Replace or change

Notice
* All consumables are chargeable
# Chargeable

# MAINTENANCE RECORD SHEET

Repair category - Free Ser./Paid Serv./Running Repair/AC Repair

| Repair Date | RO No. | Kms | Repair Category | Details of Repair done | Name of Servicing dealer | Ser. Adv. Sign. | Tech. sign. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |

# MAINTENANCE RECORD SHEET

Repair category - Free Ser./Paid Serv./Running Repair/AC Repair

| Repair Date | RO No. | Kms | Repair Category | Details of Repair done | Name of Servicing dealer | Ser. Adv. Sign. | Tech. sign. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |

## KIA ROAD-SIDE ASSITANCE PROGRAM




Kia Roadside Assistance is a 24 X 7 emergency support provided in any event of breakdown or road accident of your Kia vehicle

### Program benefits

| Events | Key Benefits |
|---|---|
| Breakdown/Accident | Onsite Repair/ Vehicle recovery in case of breakdown / Road accident |
| Flat tire | Replacement of Flat tire with the spare tire available in the vehicle/ Tire puncture repair assist from nearby repairer |
| Dead battery | Jump Start |
| Key related | In-vehicle locked keys retrieval / Lost keys & broken key assist* |
| Fuel related | Fuel delivery in case of "Out of fuel" / Incorrect fuel & Contaminated Fuel Assist (Once a year upto 5 liter then it will be chargeable) |
| Taxi arrangement (for breakdown & accident) | Taxi arrangement for up to 100 KM from breakdown location |

*Duplicate key retrieval within city limits. If key is outside city limits vehicle will be towed to nearest Kia authorized dealership

## How to request assistance




In the event of a breakdown or accident, simply call Kia Care Roadside Assistance on the toll free number 1800 108 5000. This number can also be found on the above shown sticker, which is pasted on the vehicle. Then follow the below steps to get assistance:

1. Identify your vehicle with the VIN (Chassis Number), that is available on registration certificate (or smart card) or insurance document. You can also find the VIN on the vehicle (for details please refer page 9-10 under "Specifications & Consumer Information" chapter.
2. Explain the location of your vehicle (along with nearby landmark)
3. Explain the problem you are facing with the vehicle
4. Our customer care will advise you on further course of action

**Note:**

- For your safety, park the vehicle on the edge of the road and turn on the warning lights
- In case you are on a highway, place the caution sign (warning triangle) provided with your vehicle approximately 3 meters (9 feet) from the vehicle facing towards the on-coming traffic

Terms and conditions:

1. The service is applicable for the basic warranty period of the vehicle.
2. The 24 X 7 Road side assistance is available up to a nearest Kia authorized dealer workshop.
3. The vehicle recovery and/or taxi arrangement service is applicable for a condition in which the vehicle has been immobilized.
4. Towing of vehicle subject to vehicle being parked in a location where towing vehicle can tow and all tires being rolling and in straight position, else the side glass may be broken to tow the vehicle, where the cost of repairing the glass will be borne by customer.
5. Cost of parts replacement is not included, unless covered under Kia Warranty.
6. Cost of repairs made to your vehicle is not included, unless it is covered under Kia Warranty.
7. Assistance to be provided as long as Vehicle has broken down on a motorable gazetted, concrete or bitumen road, If vehicle goes off-road or fallen in pit/ditch/valley, cost of special equipment for retrieving vehicle from pit/ditch/valley will be covered but any consequential damage would be customer's liability. Any approvals for towing, in such cases, from local authorities has to be obtained by customer.
8. Vehicle will not be towed in case of involvement of police.



LYPiO-EN01A

2020 KIA MOTORS INDIA. INC.

The Power to Surprise